



# Algebra

Revised Edition

Sets, Symbols, and  
the Language of Thought



JOHN TABAK, PH.D.

# ALGEBRA

Revised Edition

Openmirrors.com



# THE HISTORY OF MATHEMATICS

## ALGEBRA

SETS, SYMBOLS, AND THE LANGUAGE OF THOUGHT

Revised Edition

*John Tabak, Ph.D.*

Openmirrors.com



## **ALGEBRA: Sets, Symbols, and the Language of Thought, Revised Edition**

Copyright © 2011, 2004 by John Tabak, Ph.D.

All rights reserved. No part of this book may be reproduced or utilized in any form or by any means, electronic or mechanical, including photocopying, recording, or by any information storage or retrieval systems, without permission in writing from the publisher. For information contact:

Facts On File, Inc.  
An imprint of Infobase Learning  
132 West 31st Street  
New York NY 10001

### **Library of Congress Cataloging-in-Publication Data**

Tabak, John.

Algebra : sets, symbols, and the language of thought / John Tabak—Rev. ed.

p. cm.—(The history of mathematics)

Includes bibliographical references and index.

ISBN 978-0-8160-7944-5 (alk. paper)

ISBN 978-1-4381-3585-4 (e-book)

1. Algebra—History. I. Title.

QA151.T33 2011

512.009—dc22

2010021597

Facts On File books are available at special discounts when purchased in bulk quantities for businesses, associations, institutions, or sales promotions. Please call our Special Sales Department in New York at (212) 967-8800 or (800) 322-8755.

You can find Facts On File on the World Wide Web at <http://www.infobaselearning.com>

Excerpts included herewith have been reprinted by permission of the copyright holders; the author has made every effort to contact copyright holders. The publisher will be glad to rectify, in future editions, any errors or omissions brought to its notice.

Text design by David Strelecky  
Composition by Hermitage Publishing Services  
Illustrations by Dale Williams  
Photo research by Elizabeth H. Oakes  
Cover printed by Yurchak Printing, Inc., Landisville, Pa.  
Book printed and bound by Yurchak Printing, Inc., Landisville, Pa.  
Date printed: May 2011  
Printed in the United States of America

10 9 8 7 6 5 4 3 2 1

This book is printed on acid-free paper.

*To Diane Haber; teacher; mathematician, and inspirator*



# CONTENTS

Preface	x
Acknowledgments	xvi
Introduction	xvii
<b>1 The First Algebras</b>	<b>I</b>
Mesopotamia: The Beginnings of Algebra	1
Mesopotamians and Second-Degree Equations	5
The Mesopotamians and Indeterminate Equations	7
<i>Clay Tablets and Electronic Calculators</i>	8
Egyptian Algebra	10
Chinese Algebra	12
<i>Rhetorical Algebra</i>	15
<b>2 Greek Algebra</b>	<b>18</b>
The Discovery of the Pythagoreans	20
<i>The Incommensurability of <math>\sqrt{2}</math></i>	24
Geometric Algebra	25
<i>Algebra Made Visible</i>	27
Diophantus of Alexandria	31
<b>3 Algebra from India to Northern Africa</b>	<b>34</b>
Brahmagupta and the New Algebra	36
Mahavira	40
Bhaskara and the End of an Era	42
<i>Poetry and Algebra</i>	45
Islamic Mathematics	45
Al-Khwārizmī and a New Concept of Algebra	48
<i>A Problem and a Solution</i>	52
Omar Khayyám, Islamic Algebra at Its Best	52
<i>Leonardo of Pisa</i>	57

<b>4</b>	<b>Algebra as a Theory of Equations</b>	<b>58</b>
	The New Algorithms	61
	<i>Algebra as a Tool in Science</i>	67
	François Viète, Algebra as a Symbolic Language	68
	Thomas Harriot	73
	Albert Girard	75
	The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra	77
	<i>The Importance of Polynomials</i>	81
<b>5</b>	<b>Algebra in Geometry and Analysis</b>	<b>83</b>
	René Descartes	85
	<i>Descartes on Multiplication</i>	88
	Pierre de Fermat	92
	<i>Fermat's Last Theorem</i>	95
	The New Approach	97
	<i>Polar Coordinates</i>	98
<b>6</b>	<b>The Search for New Structures</b>	<b>102</b>
	Niels Henrik Abel	104
	Évariste Galois	106
	Galois Theory and the Doubling of the Cube	109
	<i>Doubling the Cube with a Straightedge and Compass</i>	
	<i>Is Impossible</i>	112
	Algebraic Structures	114
	<i>The Importance of Group Theory</i>	120
<b>7</b>	<b>The Laws of Thought</b>	<b>124</b>
	Aristotle	124
	George Boole and the Laws of Thought	127
	Boolean Algebra	131
	<i>Aristotle and Boole</i>	135
	Refining and Extending Boolean Algebra	136
	Boolean Algebra and Computers	139

<b>8</b>	<b>The Theory of Matrices and Determinants</b>	<b>142</b>
	Early Ideas	144
	Spectral Theory	148
	The Theory of Matrices	157
	<i>Matrix Multiplication</i>	163
	Emmy Noether and the Theory of Rings	165
	Nicolas Bourbaki and Mathematical Structure	169
	The Problem Solvers	172
	Conclusion	179
	Afterword: An Interview with Dr. Bonita Saunders on the Digital Library of Mathematical Functions	181
	Chronology	193
	Glossary	210
	Further Resources	215
	Index	225

# P R E F A C E

Of all human activities, mathematics is one of the oldest. Mathematics can be found on the cuneiform tablets of the Mesopotamians, on the papyri of the Egyptians, and in texts from ancient China, the Indian subcontinent, and the indigenous cultures of Central America. Sophisticated mathematical research was carried out in the Middle East for several centuries after the birth of Muhammad, and advanced mathematics has been a hallmark of European culture since the Renaissance. Today, mathematical research is carried out across the world, and it is a remarkable fact that there is no end in sight. The more we learn of mathematics, the faster the pace of discovery.

Contemporary mathematics is often extremely abstract, and the important questions with which mathematicians concern themselves can sometimes be difficult to describe to the interested nonspecialist. Perhaps this is one reason that so many histories of mathematics give so little attention to the last 100 years of discovery—this, despite the fact that the last 100 years have probably been the most productive period in the history of mathematics. One unique feature of this six-volume *History of Mathematics* is that it covers a significant portion of recent mathematical history as well as the origins. And with the help of in-depth interviews with prominent mathematicians—one for each volume—it is hoped that the reader will develop an appreciation for current work in mathematics as well as an interest in the future of this remarkable subject.

*Numbers* details the evolution of the concept of number from the simplest counting schemes to the discovery of uncomputable numbers in the latter half of the 20th century. Divided into three parts, this volume first treats numbers from the point of view of computation. The second part details the evolution of the concept of number, a process that took thousands of years and culminated in what every student recognizes as “the real number line,” an

extremely important and subtle mathematical idea. The third part of this volume concerns the evolution of the concept of the infinite. In particular, it covers Georg Cantor's discovery (or creation, depending on one's point of view) of transfinite numbers and his efforts to place set theory at the heart of modern mathematics. The most important ramifications of Cantor's work, the attempt to axiomatize mathematics carried out by David Hilbert and Bertrand Russell, and the discovery by Kurt Gödel and Alan Turing that there are limitations on what can be learned from the axiomatic method, are also described. The last chapter ends with the discovery of uncomputable numbers, a remarkable consequence of the work of Kurt Gödel and Alan Turing. The book concludes with an interview with Professor Karlis Podnieks, a mathematician of remarkable insights and a broad array of interests.

*Probability and Statistics* describes subjects that have become central to modern thought. Statistics now lies at the heart of the way that most information is communicated and interpreted. Much of our understanding of economics, science, marketing, and a host of other subjects is expressed in the language of statistics. And for many of us statistical language has become part of everyday discourse. Similarly, probability theory is used to predict everything from the weather to the success of space missions to the value of mortgage-backed securities.

The first half of the volume treats probability beginning with the earliest ideas about chance and the foundational work of Blaise Pascal and Pierre Fermat. In addition to the development of the mathematics of probability, considerable attention is given to the application of probability theory to the study of smallpox and the misapplication of probability to modern finance. More than most branches of mathematics, probability is an applied discipline, and its uses and misuses are important to us all. Statistics is the subject of the second half of the book. Beginning with the earliest examples of statistical thought, which are found in the writings of John Graunt and Edmund Halley, the volume gives special attention to two pioneers of statistical thinking, Karl Pearson and R. A. Fisher, and it describes some especially important uses and misuses of statistics, including the use of statistics



in the field of public health, an application of vital interest. The book concludes with an interview with Dr. Michael Stamatelatos, director of the Safety and Assurance Requirements Division in the Office of Safety and Mission Assurance at NASA, on the ways that probability theory, specifically the methodology of probabilistic risk assessment, is used to assess risk and improve reliability.

*Geometry* discusses one of the oldest of all branches of mathematics. Special attention is given to Greek geometry, which set the standard both for mathematical creativity and rigor for many centuries. So important was Euclidean geometry that it was not until the 19th century that mathematicians became willing to consider the existence of alternative and equally valid geometrical systems. This 19th-century revolution in mathematical, philosophical, and scientific thought is described in some detail, as are some alternatives to Euclidean geometry, including projective geometry, the non-Euclidean geometry of Nikolay Ivanovich Lobachevsky and János Bolyai, the higher (but finite) dimensional geometry of Riemann, infinite-dimensional geometric ideas, and some of the geometrical implications of the theory of relativity. The volume concludes with an interview with Professor Krystyna Kuperberg of Auburn University about her work in geometry and dynamical systems, a branch of mathematics heavily dependent on ideas from geometry. A successful and highly insightful mathematician, she also discusses the role of intuition in her research.

Mathematics is also the language of science, and mathematical methods are an important tool of discovery for scientists in many disciplines. *Mathematics and the Laws of Nature* provides an overview of the ways that mathematical thinking has influenced the evolution of science—especially the use of deductive reasoning in the development of physics, chemistry, and population genetics. It also discusses the limits of deductive reasoning in the development of science.

In antiquity, the study of geometry was often perceived as identical to the study of nature, but the axioms of Euclidean geometry were gradually supplemented by the axioms of classical physics: conservation of mass, conservation of momentum, and conservation of energy. The significance of geometry as an organizing

principle in nature was briefly subordinated by the discovery of relativity theory but restored in the 20th century by Emmy Noether's work on the relationships between conservation laws and symmetries. The book emphasizes the evolution of classical physics because classical insights remain the most important insights in many branches of science and engineering. The text also includes information on the relationship between the laws of classical physics and more recent discoveries that conflict with the classical model of nature. The main body of the text concludes with a section on the ways that probabilistic thought has sometimes supplanted older ideas about determinism. An interview with Dr. Renate Hagedorn about her work at the European Centre for Medium-Range Weather Forecasts (ECMWF), a leading center for research into meteorology and a place where many of the concepts described in this book are regularly put to the test, follows.

Of all mathematical disciplines, algebra has changed the most. While earlier generations of geometers would recognize—if not immediately understand—much of modern geometry as an extension of the subject that they had studied, it is doubtful that earlier generations of algebraists would recognize most of modern algebra as in any way related to the subject to which they devoted their time. *Algebra* details the regular revolutions in thought that have occurred in one of the most useful and vital areas of contemporary mathematics: Ancient proto-algebras, the concepts of algebra that originated in the Indian subcontinent and in the Middle East, the “reduction” of geometry to algebra begun by René Descartes, the abstract algebras that grew out of the work of Évariste Galois, the work of George Boole and some of the applications of his algebra, the theory of matrices, and the work of Emmy Noether are all described. Illustrative examples are also included. The book concludes with an interview with Dr. Bonita Saunders of the National Institute of Standards and Technology about her work on the Digital Library of Mathematical Functions, a project that mixes mathematics and science, computers and aesthetics.

New to the History of Mathematics set is *Beyond Geometry*, a volume that is devoted to set-theoretic topology. Modern

mathematics is often divided into three broad disciplines: analysis, algebra, and topology. Of these three, topology is the least known to the general public. So removed from daily experience is topology that even its subject matter is difficult to describe in a few sentences, but over the course of its roughly 100-year history, topology has become central to much of analysis as well as an important area of inquiry in its own right.

The term *topology* is applied to two very different disciplines: set-theoretic topology (also known as general topology and point-set topology), and the very different discipline of algebraic topology. For two reasons, this volume deals almost exclusively with the former. First, set-theoretic topology evolved along lines that were, in a sense, classical, and so its goals and techniques, when viewed from a certain perspective, more closely resemble those of subjects that most readers have already studied or will soon encounter. Second, some of the results of set-theoretic topology are incorporated into elementary calculus courses. Neither of these statements is true for algebraic topology, which, while a very important branch of mathematics, is based on ideas and techniques that few will encounter until the senior year of an undergraduate education in mathematics.

The first few chapters of *Beyond Geometry* provide background information needed to put the basic ideas and goals of set-theoretic topology into context. They enable the reader to better appreciate the work of the pioneers in this field. The discoveries of Bolzano, Cantor, Dedekind, and Peano are described in some detail because they provided both the motivation and foundation for much early topological research. Special attention is also given to the foundational work of Felix Hausdorff.

Set-theoretic topology has also been associated with nationalism and unusual educational philosophies. The emergence of Warsaw, Poland, as a center for topological research prior to World War II was motivated, in part, by feelings of nationalism among Polish mathematicians, and the topologist R. L. Moore at the University of Texas produced many important topologists while employing a radical approach to education that remains controversial to this day. Japan was also a prominent center of topological research,

and so it remains. The main body of the text concludes with some applications of topology, especially dimension theory, and topology as the foundation for the field of analysis. This volume contains an interview with Professor Scott Williams, an insightful thinker and pioneering topologist, on the nature of topological research and topology's place within mathematics.

The five revised editions contain a more comprehensive chronology, valid for all six volumes, an updated section of further resources, and many new color photos and line drawings. The visuals are an important part of each volume, as they enhance the narrative and illustrate a number of important (and very visual) ideas. The History of Mathematics should prove useful as a resource. It is also my hope that it will prove to be an enjoyable story to read—a tale of the evolution of some of humanity's most profound and most useful ideas.

# ACKNOWLEDGMENTS

The author is deeply appreciative of Frank Darmstadt, executive editor, for his many helpful suggestions, and to Elizabeth Oakes, for her fine photo research.

Thanks, also, to Penelope Pillsbury and the staff of the Brownell Library, Essex Junction, Vermont, for their extraordinary help with the many questions that arose during the preparation of this book. Finally, thanks to Dr. Bonita Saunders of the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST) for the generous way that she shared her time and expertise.

# INTRODUCTION

algebra n.

1. a generalization of arithmetic in which letters representing numbers are combined according to the rules of arithmetic
2. any of various systems or branches of mathematics or logic concerned with the properties and relationships of abstract entities (as complex numbers, matrices, sets, vectors, groups, rings, or fields) manipulated in symbolic form under operations often analogous to those of arithmetic

—from Merriam-Webster's Collegiate Dictionary, 11th Edition  
(© 2003 by Merriam-Webster, Incorporated  
[[www.Merriam-Webster.com](http://www.Merriam-Webster.com)])

Algebra is one of the oldest of all branches of mathematics. Today it is also one of the most abstract. Consider the following important algebraic theorem first proved by the French mathematician Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857):

Let the letter  $G$  denote a finite group. Let  $N$  represent the number of elements in  $G$ . Let  $p$  represent a prime number. If  $p$  divides  $N$ , then  $G$  has an element of order  $p$ .

To many people without a background in mathematics, it is not clear what this statement means or even if it means anything at all. But Cauchy's theorem reveals an important property shared by every *group* that is comprised of a finite collection of objects. The theorem is important because groups are central to modern algebra.

When contemporary mathematicians speak of algebra, they usually use the term in a way that is very different from what most of us understand the word *algebra* to mean. To be sure, all branches of mathematics have become increasingly abstract, but those mathematicians who study geometry, for example, continue

to study properties that most people would—with some prompting—still recognize as geometric, and probability, no matter how advanced the treatment, still concerns itself with the odds that some event will occur. But modern algebra is completely divorced from the subject most learn about in school.

For thousands of years, algebra consisted solely of expanding the list of problem-solving algorithms—a list of procedures similar in concept to the quadratic formula. But much of contemporary algebra focuses on identifying and describing the logical structures upon which mathematics is built. It is now clear that identifying and exploiting these structures is just as important for mathematical and scientific progress as the development of new algorithms. *Algebra, Revised Edition* describes the history of both strands of algebraic thought.

Chapters 1 and 2 describe some of the earliest progress in algebra. Mathematicians in Mesopotamia, Egypt, China, and Greece all contributed to this early period—although there was more progress in Mesopotamia, China, and Greece than in Egypt.

Chapter 3 describes the research that was conducted in present-day India, the Mideast, and North Africa. From the Indian subcontinent came important breakthroughs in algebraic techniques and a more inclusive concept of what constitutes a solution to an algebraic equation. Mathematicians in the Mideast and North Africa were the first to adopt a logically rigorous approach to algebra.

Chapter 4 describes how European mathematicians, after absorbing the work of their predecessors, began to use letters to represent numbers. They sought an abstract visual language that would generalize arithmetic and enable them to develop a theory of equations.

Chapter 5 describes how mathematicians of the European Enlightenment further developed the language of algebra. Coordinate systems were first widely adopted at this time and served as a bridge between the formerly separate branches of geometry and algebra. The result was a new field of mathematics, analytic geometry, and progress in both geometry and algebra was accelerated.

Chapters 6 and 8 describe the beginnings of what is now often called “modern” algebra. The origins of modern algebra date to the 19th century. It was during this time that mathematicians began to notice the same logical structures embedded in many different mathematical systems. Mathematical structures called groups were the first to be described and exploited, but the identification and study of other logical structures soon followed. This type of mathematical research continues to occupy the attention of many mathematicians today. Much of the material in chapter 8 is new to this edition.

Finally, chapter 7 describes Boolean algebra, which was developed in the first half of the 19th century by George Boole. Boolean algebra is important, in part, because its results are used in the design of computer chips. Perhaps more important from the point of view of a history of algebra is Boole’s insistence that the proper subject matter of mathematics is the relationships that exist among abstract symbols. His heightened sense of rigor was a revelation to his contemporaries, and many, including the mathematician and philosopher Bertrand Russell, now assert that modern mathematics began with the work of George Boole.

In addition to an expanded chronology, an updated glossary, and new additions to the section on further reading, the second edition contains an interview with Dr. Bonita Saunders, a research mathematician at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), about her work in creating the Digital Library of Mathematical Functions. Her work is an elegant blend of algebra, geometry, and computer graphics with applications to the physical sciences.

Algebra has become the language of engineering, science, and mathematics. It is doubtful that many of the basic concepts upon which these subjects are founded could now be expressed without algebraic notation. Modern life depends on algebra, and developing an appreciation for the history of algebra is an important part of understanding how that dependence has evolved and why algebra is so important today.





# 1

## THE FIRST ALGEBRAS

How far back in time does the history of algebra begin? Some scholars begin the history of algebra with the work of the Greek mathematician Diophantus of Alexandria (ca. third century C.E.). It is easy to see why Diophantus is always included. His works contain problems that most modern readers have no difficulty recognizing as algebraic.

Other scholars begin much earlier than the time of Diophantus. They believe that the history of algebra begins with the mathematical texts of the Mesopotamians. The Mesopotamians were a people who inhabited an area that is now inside the country of Iraq. Their written records begin about 5,000 years ago in the city-state of Sumer. The Mesopotamians were one of the first, perhaps *the* first, of all literate civilizations, and they remained at the forefront of the world's mathematical cultures for well over 2,000 years. Since the 19th century, when archaeologists began to unearth the remains of Mesopotamian cities in search of clues to this long-forgotten culture, hundreds of thousands of their clay tablets have been recovered. These include a number of mathematics tablets. Some tablets use mathematics to solve scientific and legal problems—for example, the timing of an eclipse or the division of an estate. Other tablets, called problem texts, are clearly designed to serve as “textbooks.”

### **Mesopotamia: The Beginnings of Algebra**

We begin our history of algebra with the Mesopotamians. Not everyone believes that the Mesopotamians knew algebra. That they were a mathematically sophisticated people is beyond doubt.



*Ruins of a massive mud-brick Mesopotamian temple called a ziggurat. For 3,000 years, Mesopotamia was one of the most mathematically advanced civilizations on the planet. Remnants of Mesopotamian mathematics remain in the way we measure angles (in degrees) and time (in minutes and seconds).*

They solved a wide variety of mathematical problems. The difficulty in determining whether the Mesopotamians knew any algebra arises not in what the Mesopotamians did—because their mathematics is well documented—but in how they did it. Mesopotamian mathematicians solved many important problems in ways that were quite different from the way we would solve those same problems. Many of the problems that were of interest to the Mesopotamians *we would solve with algebra*.

Although they spent thousands of years solving equations, the Mesopotamians had little interest in a general theory of equations. Moreover, there is little algebraic language in their methods of solution. Mesopotamian mathematicians seem to have learned mathematics simply by studying individual problems. They moved from one problem to the next and thereby advanced from the

simple to the complex in much the same way that students today might learn to play the piano. An aspiring piano student might begin with “Old McDonald” and after much practice master the works of Frédéric Chopin. Ambitious piano students can learn the theory of music as they progress in their musical studies, but there is no necessity to do so—not if their primary interest is in the area of performance. In a similar way, Mesopotamian students began with simple arithmetic and advanced to problems that we would solve with, for example, the quadratic formula. For this reason Mesopotamian mathematics is sometimes called protoalgebra or arithmetic algebra or numerical algebra. Their work is an important first step in the development of algebra.

It is not always easy to appreciate the accomplishments of the Mesopotamians and other ancient cultures. One barrier to our appreciation emerges when we express their ideas in our notation. When we do so it can be difficult for us to see why they had to work so hard to obtain a solution. The reason for their difficulties, however, is not hard to identify. Our algebraic notation is so powerful that it makes problems that were challenging to them appear almost trivial to us. Mesopotamian problem texts, the equivalent of our school textbooks, generally consist of one or more problems that are communicated in the following way: First, the problem is stated; next, a step-by-step algorithm or method of solution is described; and, finally, the presentation concludes with the answer to the problem. The algorithm does not contain “equals signs” or other notational conveniences. Instead it consists of one terse phrase or sentence after another. The lack of symbolic notation is one important reason the problems were so difficult for them to solve.

The Mesopotamians did use a few terms in a way that would roughly correspond to our use of an abstract notation. In particular they used the words *length* and *width* as we would use the variables  $x$  and  $y$  to represent unknowns. The product of the length and width they called *area*. We would write the product of  $x$  and  $y$  as  $xy$ . Their use of the geometric words *length*, *width*, and *area*, however, does not indicate that they were interpreting their work geometrically. We can be sure of this because in some problem texts the reader is advised to perform operations that

#### 4 ALGEBRA

involve multiplying *length* and *width* to obtain *area* and then adding (or subtracting) a *length* or a *width* from an *area*. Geometrically, of course, this makes no sense. To see the difference between the brief, to-the-point algebraic symbolism that we use and the very wordy descriptions of algebra used by all early mathematical cultures, and the Mesopotamians in particular, consider a simple example. Suppose we wanted to add the difference  $x - y$  to the product  $xy$ . We would write the simple phrase

$$xy + x - y$$

In this excerpt from an actual Mesopotamian problem text, the short phrase  $xy + x - y$  is expressed this way:

Length, width. I have multiplied length and width, thus obtaining the area. Next I added to the area the excess of the length over the width.

*(Van der Waerden, B. L. Geometry and Algebra in Ancient Civilizations. New York: Springer-Verlag, 1983. Page 72.  
Used with permission)*

Despite the lack of an easy-to-use symbolism, Mesopotamian methods for solving algebraic equations were extremely advanced for their time. They set a sort of world standard for at least 2,000 years.

Translations of the Mesopotamian algorithms, or methods of solution, can be difficult for the modern reader to appreciate. Part of the difficulty is associated with their complexity. From our point of view, Mesopotamian algorithms sometimes appear unnecessarily complex given the relative simplicity of the problems that they were solving. The reason is that the algorithms contain numerous separate procedures for what the Mesopotamians perceived to be different types of problems; each type required a different method. Our understanding is different from that of the Mesopotamians: We recognize that many of the different “types” of problems perceived by the Mesopotamians can be solved with just a few different algorithms. An excellent example of this phenomenon is the problem of solving second-degree equations.

## Mesopotamians and Second-Degree Equations

There is no better example of the difference between modern methods and ancient ones than the difference between our approach and their approach to solving *second-degree equations*. (These are equations involving a polynomial in which the highest exponent appearing in the equation is 2.) Nowadays we understand that all second-degree equations are of a single form:

$$ax^2 + bx + c = 0$$

where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  represent numbers and  $x$  is the unknown whose value we wish to compute. We solve all such equations with a single very powerful algorithm—a method of solution that most students learn in high school—called the quadratic formula. The quadratic formula allows us to solve these problems without giving much thought to either the size or the sign of the numbers represented by the letters  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ . For a modern reader it hardly matters. The Mesopotamians, however, devoted a lot of energy to solving equations of this sort, because for them there was not one form of a second-degree equation but several. Consequently, there could not be one method of solution. Instead the Mesopotamians required several algorithms for the several different types of second-degree equations that they perceived.

The reason they had a more complicated view of these problems is that they had a narrower concept of number than we do. They did not accept negative numbers as “real,” although they must have run into them at least occasionally in their computations. The price they paid for avoiding negative numbers was a more complicated approach to what we perceive as essentially a single problem. The approach they took depended on the values of  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ .

Today, we use negative numbers, irrational numbers, and even imaginary numbers. We accept all such numbers as solutions to second-degree equations, but all of this is a relatively recent historical phenomenon. Because we have such a broad idea of number we are able to solve all second-degree algebraic equations with the quadratic formula, a one-size-fits-all method of solution. By

## 6 ALGEBRA

contrast the Mesopotamians *perceived* that there were three basic types of second-degree equations. In our notation we would write these equations like this:

$$x^2 + bx = c$$

$$x^2 + c = bx$$

$$x^2 = bx + c$$

where, in each equation,  $b$  and  $c$  represent positive numbers. This approach avoids the “problem” of the appearance of negative numbers in the equation. The first job of any scribe or mathematician was to reduce or “simplify” the given second-degree equation to one of the three types listed. Once this was done, the appropriate algorithm could be employed for that type of equation and the solution could be found.

In addition to second-degree equations the Mesopotamians knew how to solve the much easier first-degree equations. We call these linear equations. In fact, the Mesopotamians were advanced enough that they apparently considered these equations too simple to warrant much study. We would write a first-degree equation in the form

$$ax + b = 0$$

where  $a$  and  $b$  are numbers and  $x$  is the unknown.

They also had methods for finding accurate approximations for solutions to certain third-degree and even some fourth-degree equations. (Third- and fourth-degree equations are polynomial equations in which the highest exponents that appear are 3 and 4, respectively.) They did not, however, have a general method for finding the precise solutions to third- and fourth-degree equations. Algorithms that enable one to find the exact solutions to equations of the third and fourth degrees were not developed until about 450 years ago. What the Mesopotamians discovered instead were methods for developing *approximations* to the solutions. From a practical point of view an accurate approximation is usually as good as an exact solution, but from a mathematical point of view the two are quite different. The distinctions that we



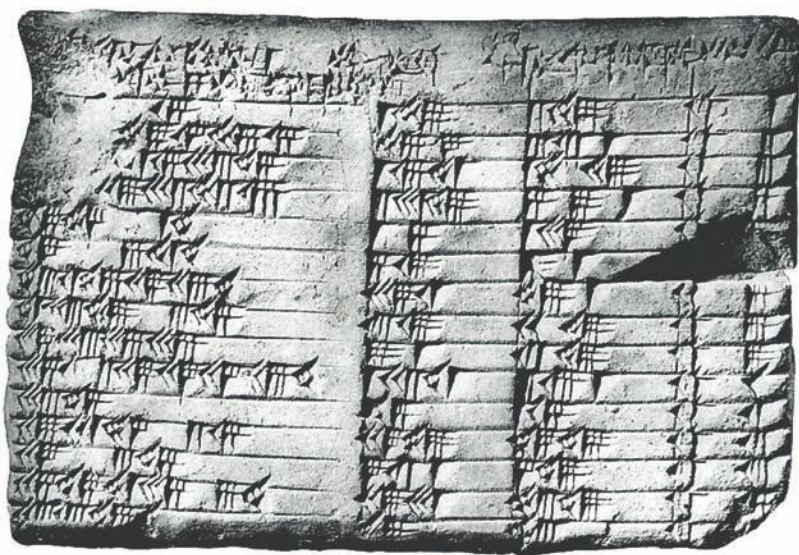
make between exact and approximate solutions were not important to the Mesopotamians. They seemed satisfied as long as their approximations were accurate enough for the applications that they had in mind.

## The Mesopotamians and Indeterminate Equations

In modern notation an indeterminate equation—that is, an equation with many different solutions—is usually easy to recognize. If we have one equation and more than one unknown then the equation is generally indeterminate. One of the most famous examples of an indeterminate equation from Mesopotamia can be expressed in our notation as

$$x^2 + y^2 = z^2$$

The fact that that we have three variables but only one equation is a good indicator that this equation is probably indeterminate.



*Cuneiform tablet, Plimpton 322—this tablet is the best known of all Mesopotamian mathematical tablets; its meaning is still a subject of scholarly debate.*



## 8 ALGEBRA

And so it is. Geometrically we can interpret this equation as the Pythagorean theorem, which states that for a right triangle the square of the length of the hypotenuse (here represented by  $z^2$ ) equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the two remaining sides. The Mesopotamians knew this theorem long before the birth of Pythagoras, however, and their problem texts are replete with exercises involving what we call the Pythagorean theorem.

The Pythagorean theorem is usually encountered in high school or junior high in a problem in which the length of two sides of a

### CLAY TABLETS AND ELECTRONIC CALCULATORS

The positive square root of the positive number  $a$ —usually written as  $\sqrt{a}$ —is the positive number with the property that if we multiply it by itself we obtain  $a$ . Unfortunately, writing the square root of  $a$  as  $\sqrt{a}$  does not tell us what the number is. Instead, it tells us what  $\sqrt{a}$  does: If we square  $\sqrt{a}$  we get  $a$ .

Some square roots are easy to write. In these cases the square root sign,  $\sqrt{\phantom{x}}$ , is not really necessary. For example, 2 is the square root of 4, and 3 is the square root of 9. In symbols we could write  $2 = \sqrt{4}$  and  $3 = \sqrt{9}$  but few of us bother.

The situation is a little more complicated, however, when we want to know the square root of 2, for example. How do we find the square root of 2? It is not an especially easy problem to solve. It is, however, equivalent to finding the solution of the second-degree equation

$$x^2 - 2 = 0$$

Notice that when the number  $\sqrt{2}$  is substituted for  $x$  in the equation we obtain a true statement. Unfortunately, this fact does not convey much information about the size of the number we write as  $\sqrt{2}$ .

The Mesopotamians developed an algorithm for computing square roots that yields an accurate approximation for any positive square root. (As the Mesopotamians did, we will consider only positive square roots.) For definiteness, we will apply the method to the problem of calculating  $\sqrt{2}$ .

The Mesopotamians used what we now call a recursion algorithm to compute square roots. A recursion algorithm consists of several steps. The output of one step becomes the input for the next step. The more often one repeats the process—that is, the more steps one takes—the

right triangle are given and the student has to find the length of the third side. The Mesopotamians solved problems like this as well, but the indeterminate form of the problem—with its three unknowns rather than one—can be a little more challenging. The indeterminate version of the problem consists of identifying what we now call Pythagorean triples. These are solutions to the equation given here that involve only whole numbers.

There are infinitely many Pythagorean triples, and Mesopotamian mathematicians exercised considerable ingenuity and

closer one gets to the exact answer. To get started, we need an “input” for the first step in our algorithm. We can begin with a guess; they did. Almost any guess will do. After we input our initial guess we just repeat the process over and over again until we are as close as we want to be. In a more or less modern notation we can represent the Mesopotamian algorithm like this:

$$OUTPUT = 1/2(INPUT + 2/INPUT)$$

(If we wanted to compute  $\sqrt{5}$ , for example, we would only have to change  $2/INPUT$  into  $5/INPUT$ . Everything else stays the same.)

If, at the first step, we use 1.5 as our input, then our output is  $1.41\bar{6}$  because

$$1.41\bar{6} = 1/2(1.5 + 2/1.5)$$

At the end of the second step we would have

$$1.414215 \dots = 1/2(1.41\bar{6} + 2/1.41\bar{6})$$

as our estimate for  $\sqrt{2}$ . We could continue to compute more steps in the algorithm, but after two steps (and with the aid of a good initial guess) our approximation agrees with the actual value of  $\sqrt{2}$  up to the millionth place—an estimate that is close enough for many practical purposes.

What is especially interesting about this algorithm from a modern point of view is that it may be the one that your calculator uses to compute square roots. The difference is that instead of representing the algorithm on a clay tablet, the calculator represents the algorithm on an electronic circuit! This algorithm is as old as civilization.

mathematical sophistication in finding solutions. They then compiled these whole number solutions in tables. Some simple examples of Pythagorean triples include (3, 4, 5) and (5, 12, 13), where in our notation, taken from a preceding paragraph,  $z = 5$  in the first triple and  $z = 13$  in the next triple. (The numbers 3 and 4 in the first triple, for example, can be placed in either of the remaining positions in the equation and the statement remains true.)

The Mesopotamians did not indicate the method that they used to find these Pythagorean triples, so we cannot say for certain how they found them. Of course a few correct triples could be attributed to lucky guesses. We can be sure, however, that the Mesopotamians had a method worked out because their other solutions to the problem of finding Pythagorean triples include (2,700, 1,771, 3,229), (4,800, 4,601, 6,649), and (13,500, 12,709, 18,541).

The search for Pythagorean triples occupied mathematicians in different parts of the globe for millennia. A very famous generalization of the equation we use to describe Pythagorean triples was proposed by the 17th-century French mathematician Pierre de Fermat. His conjecture about the nature of these equations, called Fermat's last theorem, occupied the attention of mathematicians right up to the present time and was finally solved only recently; we will describe this generalization later in this volume. Today the mathematics for generating all Pythagorean triples is well known but not especially easy to describe. That the mathematicians in the first literate culture in world history should have solved the problem is truly remarkable.

## Egyptian Algebra

Little is left of Egyptian mathematics. The primary sources are a few papyri, the most famous of which is called the Ahmes papyrus, and the first thing one notices about these texts is that the Egyptians were not as mathematically adept as their neighbors and contemporaries the Mesopotamians—at least there is no indication of a higher level of attainment in the surviving records. It would be tempting to concentrate exclusively on

the Mesopotamians, the Chinese, and the Greeks as sources of early algebraic thought. We include the Egyptians because Pythagoras, who is an important figure in our story, apparently received at least some of his mathematical education in Egypt. So did Thales, another very early and very important figure in Greek mathematics. In addition, certain other peculiar characteristics of Egyptian mathematics, especially their penchant for writing all fractions as sums of what are called unit fractions, can be found in several cultures throughout the region and even as far away as China. (A *unit fraction* is a fraction with a 1 in the numerator.) None of these commonalities proves that Egypt was the original source of a lot of commonly held mathematical ideas and practices, but there are indications that this could be true. The Greeks, for example, claimed that their mathematics originated in Egypt.

Egyptian arithmetic was considerably more primitive than that of their neighbors the Mesopotamians. Even multiplication was not treated in a general way. To multiply two numbers together they used a method that consisted of repeatedly doubling one of the numbers and then adding together some of the intermediate steps. For example, to compute  $5 \times 80$ , first find  $2 \times 80$  and then double the result to get  $4 \times 80$ . Finally,  $1 \times 80$  would be added to  $4 \times 80$  to get the answer,  $5 \times 80$ . This method, though it works, is awkward.

Egyptian algebra employed the symbol *heap* for the unknown. Problems were phrased in terms of “heaps” and then solved. To paraphrase a problem taken from the most famous of Egyptian mathematical texts, the Ahmes papyrus: If 1 heap and  $1/7$  of a heap together equal 19, what is the value of the heap? (In our notation we would write the corresponding equation as  $x + x/7 = 19$ .) This type of problem yields what we would call a linear equation. It is not the kind of exercise that attracted much attention from Mesopotamian mathematicians, who were concerned with more difficult problems, but the Egyptians apparently found them challenging enough to be worth studying.

What is most remarkable about Egyptian mathematics is that it seemed to be adequate for the needs of the Egyptians for thousands of years. Egyptian culture is famous for its stunning architecture

and its high degree of social organization and stability. These were tremendous accomplishments, and yet the Egyptians seem to have accomplished all of this with a very simple mathematical system, a system with which they were apparently quite satisfied.

## Chinese Algebra

The recorded history of Chinese mathematics begins in the Han dynasty, a period that lasted from 206 B.C.E. until 220 C.E. Records from this time are about 2,000 years younger than many Mesopotamian mathematics texts. What we find in these earliest of records of Chinese mathematics is that Chinese mathematicians had already developed an advanced mathematical culture. It would be interesting to know when the Chinese began to develop their mathematics and how their ideas changed over time, but little is known about mathematics in China before the founding of the Han dynasty. This lack of knowledge is the result of a deliberate act. The first emperor of China, Qin Shi Huang, who died in the year 210 B.C.E., ordered that all books be burned. This was done. The book burners were diligent. As a consequence, little information is available about Chinese mathematical thought before 206 B.C.E.

One of the first and certainly the most important of all early surviving Chinese mathematical texts is *Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art*, or the *Nine Chapters* for short. (It is also known as *Arithmetic in Nine Sections*.) The mathematics in the *Nine Chapters* is already fairly sophisticated, comparable with the mathematics of Mesopotamia. The *Nine Chapters* has more than one author and is based on a work that survived, at least in part, the book burning campaign of the emperor Qin Shi Huang. Because it was extensively rewritten and enlarged, knowing what the original text was like is difficult. In any case, it is one of the earliest extant Chinese mathematical texts. It is also one of the best known. It was used as a math text for generations, and it served as an important source of inspiration for Chinese mathematicians.

In its final form the *Nine Chapters* consists of 246 problems on a wide variety of topics. There are problems in taxation,



*Temple built during the Han dynasty—Chinese mathematics flourished during the Han dynasty.*

surveying, engineering, and geometry and methods of solution for determinate and indeterminate equations alike. The tone of the text is much more conversational than that adopted by the Mesopotamian scribes. It is a nice example of what is now known as rhetorical algebra. (*Rhetorical algebra* is algebra that is expressed with little or no specialized algebraic notation.) Everything—the problem, the solution, and the algorithm that is used to obtain the solution—is expressed in words and numbers, not in mathematical symbols. There are no “equals” signs, no  $x$ ’s to represent unknowns, and none of the other notational tools that we use when we study algebra. Most of us do not recognize what a great advantage algebraic notation is until after we read problems like those in the *Nine Chapters*. These problems make for fairly difficult reading for the modern reader precisely because they are expressed without the algebraic symbolism to which we have become accustomed. Even simple problems require a lot of explanatory prose when they are written without algebraic notation. The authors of the *Nine Chapters* did not shy away from using as much prose as was required.

Aside from matters of style, Mesopotamian problem texts and the *Nine Chapters* have a lot in common. There is little in the way of a general theory of mathematics in either one. Chinese and Mesopotamian authors are familiar with many algorithms that work, but they express little interest in *proving* that the algorithms work as advertised. It is not clear why this is so. Later Mesopotamian mathematicians, at least, had every opportunity to become familiar with Greek mathematics, in which the idea of proof was central. The work of their Greek contemporaries had little apparent influence on the Mesopotamians. Some historians believe that there was also some interaction between the Chinese and Greek cultures, if not directly, then at least by way of India. If this was the case, then Chinese mathematics was not overly influenced by contact with the Greeks, either. Perhaps the Chinese approach to mathematics was simply a matter of taste. Perhaps Chinese mathematicians (and their Mesopotamian counterparts) had little interest in exploring the mathematical landscape in the way that the Greeks did. Or perhaps the Greek approach was unknown to the authors of the *Nine Chapters*.

Another similarity between Mesopotamian and Chinese mathematicians lay in their use of approximations. As with the Mesopotamians, Chinese mathematicians made little distinction between exact results and good approximations. And as with their Mesopotamian counterparts, Chinese mathematicians developed a good deal of skill in obtaining accurate approximations for square roots. Even the method of conveying mathematical knowledge used by the authors of the *Nine Chapters* is similar to that of the Mesopotamian scribes in their problem texts. Like the Mesopotamian texts, the *Nine Chapters* is written as a straightforward set of problems. The problems are stated, as are the solutions, and an algorithm or “rule” is given so the reader can solve the given problem for himself or herself. The mathematics in the *Nine Chapters* is not higher mathematics in a modern sense; it is, instead, a highly developed example of “practical” mathematics.

The authors of the *Nine Chapters* solved many determinate equations (see the sidebar Rhetorical Algebra for an example). They were at home manipulating positive whole numbers, fractions, and



## RHETORICAL ALGEBRA

The following problem is an example of Chinese rhetorical algebra taken from the *Nine Chapters*. This particular problem is representative of the types of problems that one finds in the *Nine Chapters*; it is also a good example of rhetorical algebra, which is algebra that is expressed without specialized algebraic notation.

In this problem the authors of the *Nine Chapters* consider three types or “classes” of corn measured out in standard units called measures. The corn in this problem, however, is not divided into measures; it is divided into “bundles.” The number of measures of corn in one bundle depends on the class of corn considered. The goal of the problem is to discover how many measures of corn constitute one bundle for each class of corn. The method of solution is called the Rule. Here are the problem and its solution:

There are three classes of corn, of which three bundles of the first class, two of the second and one of the third make 39 measures. Two of the first, three of the second and one of the third make 34 measures. And one of the first, two of the second and three of the third make 26 measures. How many measures of grain are contained in one bundle of each class?

Rule. Arrange the 3, 2, and 1 bundles of the three classes and the 39 measures of their grains at the right.

Arrange other conditions at the middle and at the left. With the first class in the right column multiply currently the middle column, and directly leave out.

Again multiply the next, and directly leave out.

Then with what remains of the second class in the middle column, directly leave out.

Of the quantities that do not vanish, make the upper the *fa*, the divisor, and the lower the *shih*, the dividend, i.e., the dividend for the third class.

To find the second class, with the divisor multiply the measure in the middle column and leave out of it the dividend for the third class. The remainder, being divided by the number of bundles of the second class, gives the dividend for the third class. To find the second class, with the divisor multiply the measure in the middle column and leave out of it the dividend for the third class. The remainder, being divided by the number

(continues)



## RHETORICAL ALGEBRA

(continued)

of bundles of the second class, gives the dividend for the second class.

To find the first class, also with the divisor multiply the measures in the right column and leave out from it the dividends for the third and second classes. The remainder, being divided by the number of bundles of the first class, gives the dividend for the first class.

Divide the dividends of the three classes by the divisor, and we get their respective measures.

*(Mikami, Yoshio. The Development of Mathematics in China and Japan. New York: Chelsea Publishing, 1913)*

The problem, which is the type of problem often encountered in junior high or high school algebra classes, is fairly difficult to read, but only because the problem—and especially the solution—are expressed rhetorically. In modern algebraic notation we would express the problem with three variables. Let  $x$  represent a bundle for the first class of corn,  $y$  represent a bundle for the second class of corn, and  $z$  represent a bundle for the third class of corn. In our notation the problem would be expressed like this:

$$3x + 2y + z = 39$$

$$2x + 3y + z = 34$$

$$x + 2y + 3z = 26$$

The answer is correctly given as  $9 \frac{1}{4}$  measures of corn in the first bundle,  $4 \frac{1}{4}$  measures of corn in the second bundle, and  $2 \frac{3}{4}$  measures of corn in the third bundle.

Today this is not a particularly difficult problem to solve, but at the time that the *Nine Chapters* was written this problem was for experts only. The absence of adequate symbolism was a substantial barrier to mathematical progress.

even negative numbers. Unlike the Mesopotamians, the Chinese accepted the existence of negative numbers and were willing to work with negative numbers to obtain solutions to the problems

that interested them. In fact, the *Nine Chapters* even gives rules for dealing with negative numbers. This is important because negative numbers can arise during the process of solving many different algebraic problems even when the final answers are positive. When one refuses to deal with negative numbers, one's work becomes much harder. In this sense the Chinese methods for solving algebraic equations were more adaptable and "modern" than were the methods used by the Mesopotamians, who strove to avoid negative numbers.

In addition to their work on determinate equations, Chinese mathematicians had a deep and abiding interest in indeterminate equations, equations for which there are more unknowns than there are equations. As were the Mesopotamians, Chinese mathematicians were also familiar with the theorem of Pythagoras and used the equation (which we might write as  $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ ) to pose indeterminate as well as determinate problems. They enjoyed finding Pythagorean triples just as the Mesopotamians did, and they compiled their results just as the Mesopotamians did.

The algebras that developed in the widely separated societies described in this chapter are remarkably similar. Many of the problems that were studied are similar. The approach to problem solving—the emphasis on algorithms rather than a theory of equations—was a characteristic that all of these cultures shared. Finally, not one of the cultures developed a specialized set of algebraic symbols to express their ideas. All these algebras were rhetorical. There was one exception, however. That was the algebra that was developed in ancient Greece.

# 2

## GREEK ALGEBRA

Greek mathematics is fundamentally different from the mathematics of Mesopotamia and China. The unique nature of Greek mathematics seems to have been present right from the outset in the work of Thales of Miletus (ca. 625 B.C.E.–ca. 546 B.C.E.) and Pythagoras of Samos (ca. 582 B.C.E.–ca. 500 B.C.E.). In the beginning, however, the Greeks were not solving problems that were any harder than those of the Mesopotamians or the Chinese. In fact, the Greeks were not interested in problem solving at all—at least not in the sense that the Mesopotamian and Chinese mathematicians were. Greek mathematicians for the most part did not solve problems in taxation, surveying, or the division of food. They were interested, instead, in questions about the nature of number and form.

It could be argued that Chinese and Mesopotamian mathematicians were not really interested in these applications, either—that they simply used practical problems to express their mathematical insights. Perhaps they simply preferred to express their mathematical ideas in practical terms. Perhaps, as it was for their Greek counterparts, it was the mathematics and not the applications that provided them with their motivation.

There is, however, no doubt about how the Greeks felt about utilitarian mathematics. The Greeks did not—would not—express their mathematical ideas through problems involving measures of corn or the division of estates or any other practical language. They must have known, just as the Mesopotamian and Chinese mathematicians knew, that all of these fields are rich sources of mathematical problems. To the Greeks this did not matter. The



*The ruins of the Lyceum, the school where Aristotle taught. Mathematics was an integral part of Greek philosophical thought. (History of Macedonia Blog)*

Greeks were interested in mathematics for the sake of mathematics. They expressed their ideas in terms of the properties of numbers, points, curves, planes, and geometric solids. Most of them had no interest in applications of their subject, and in case anyone missed the point they were fond of reciting the story about the mathematician Euclid of Alexandria, who, when a student inquired about the utility of mathematics, instructed his servant to give the student a few coins so that he could profit from his studies.

Another important difference between Greek mathematicians and the mathematicians of other ancient cultures was the distinction that the Greeks made between exact and approximate results. This distinction is largely absent from other mathematical cultures of the time. In a practical sense, exact results are generally no more useful than good approximations. Practical problems involve measurements, and measurements generally involve some uncertainty. For example, when we measure the length of a line segment our measurement removes some of our uncertainty about the “true” length of the segment, but some uncertainty remains. This uncertainty is our margin of error. Although we can further reduce

our uncertainty with better measurements, we cannot eliminate all uncertainty. As a consequence, any computations that depend on this measurement must also reflect our initial imprecision about the length of the segment. Our methods may be exact in the sense that if we had exact data then our solution would be exact as well. Unfortunately, exact measurements are generally not available.

The Greek interest in precision influenced not only the way they investigated mathematics; it also influenced what they investigated. It was their interest in exact solutions that led to one of the most profound discoveries in ancient mathematics.

### **The Discovery of the Pythagoreans**

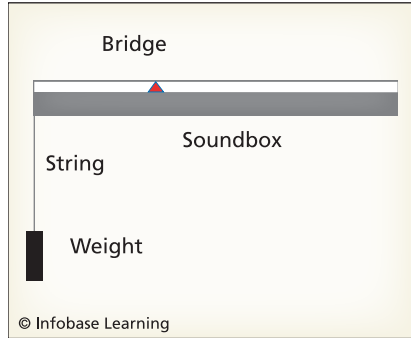
Pythagoras of Samos was one of the first Greek mathematicians. He was extremely influential, although, as we will soon see, we cannot attribute any particular discoveries to him. As a young man Pythagoras is said to have traveled widely. He apparently received his mathematics education in Egypt and Mesopotamia. He may have traveled as far east as India. Eventually he settled on the southeastern coast of what is now Italy in the Greek city of Cortona. (Although we tend to think of Greek civilization as situated within the boundaries of present-day Greece, there was a time when Greek cities were scattered throughout a much larger area along the Mediterranean Sea.)

Pythagoras was a mystic as well as a philosopher and mathematician. Many people were attracted to him personally as well as to his ideas. He founded a community in Cortona where he and his many disciples lived communally. They shared property, ideas, and credit for those ideas. No Pythagorean took individual credit for a discovery, and as a consequence we cannot be sure which of the discoveries attributed to Pythagoras were his and which were his disciples'. For that reason we discuss the contributions of the Pythagoreans rather than the contributions of Pythagoras himself. There is, however, one point about Pythagoras about which we can be sure: Pythagoras did not discover the Pythagorean theorem. The theorem was known to Mesopotamian mathematicians more than 30 generations before Pythagoras's birth.

At the heart of Pythagorean philosophy was the maxim “All is number.” There is no better example of this than their ideas about music. They noticed that the musical tones produced by a string could be described by whole number ratios. They investigated music with an instrument called a monochord, a device consisting of one string stretched between two supports. (The supports may have been attached to a hollow box to produce a richer, more harmonious sound.) The Pythagorean monochord had a third support that was slid back and forth under the string. It could be placed anywhere between the two end supports.

The Pythagoreans discovered that when the third support divided the length of the string into certain whole number ratios, the sounds produced by the two string segments were harmonious or consonant. This observation indicated to them that music could be described in terms of certain numerical ratios. They identified these ratios and listed them. The ratios of the lengths of the two string segments that they identified as consonant were 1:1, 1:2, 2:3, and 3:4. The ratio 1:1, of course, is the unison: Both string segments are vibrating at the same pitch. The ratio 1:2 is what musicians now call an octave. The ratio 2:3 is the perfect fifth, and the ratio 3:4 is the perfect fourth. The identification of these whole number ratios was profoundly important to the Pythagoreans. They believed that everything—all human creations, the natural world, and mathematics—could be expressed via whole number ratios.

The Pythagoreans worshipped numbers. It was part of their beliefs that certain numbers were invested with special properties. The number 4, for example, was the number of justice and retribution. The number 1 was the number of reason. When they referred to “numbers,” however, they meant *only* what we would



*A monochord, a device used by the Pythagoreans to investigate the relationships that exist between musical pitches and mathematical ratios*

call positive, whole numbers, that is, the numbers belonging to the sequence 1, 2, 3, . . . (Notice that the consonant tones of the monochord were produced by dividing the string into simple *whole number ratios*.) They did not recognize negative numbers, the number 0, or any type of fraction as a number. Quantities that we might describe with a fraction they would describe as a ratio between two whole numbers, and although we might not make a distinction between a ratio and a fraction, we need to recognize that they did. They only recognized ratios.

To the Pythagoreans the number 1 was the generator of all numbers—by adding 1 to itself often enough they could obtain every number (or at least every number as they understood the concept). What we would use fractions to represent, they described as ratios of sums of the number 1. A consequence of this concept of number—coupled with their mystical belief that “all is number”—is that everything in the universe can be generated from the number 1. *Everything*, in the Pythagorean view, was in the end a matter of whole number arithmetic. This idea, however, was incorrect, and their discovery that their idea of number was seriously flawed is one of the most important and far-reaching discoveries in the history of mathematics.

To understand the flaw in the Pythagorean idea of number we turn to the idea of commensurability. We say that two line segments—we call them  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ —are commensurable, if there is a third line segment—we call it  $L_3$ —with the property that the lengths  $L_1$  and  $L_2$  are whole number multiples of length  $L_3$ . In this sense  $L_3$  is a “common measure” of  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . For example, if segment  $L_1$  is 2 units long and  $L_2$  is 3 units long then we can take  $L_3$  to be 1 unit long, and we can use  $L_3$  to measure (evenly) the lengths of both  $L_1$  and  $L_2$ . The idea of commensurability agrees with our intuition. It agrees with our experience. Given two line segments we can always measure them and then find a line segment whose length evenly divides both. This idea is at the heart of the Pythagorean concept of number, and that is why it came as such a shock to discover that there existed pairs of line segments that were incommensurable, that is, that there exist pairs of segments that *share no common measure*!

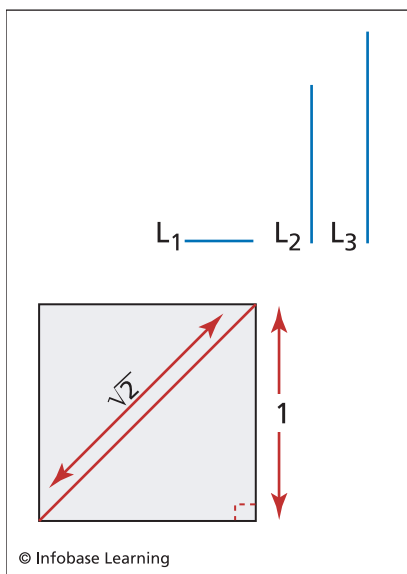
The discovery of incommensurability was a fatal blow to the Pythagorean idea of number; that is why they are said to have tried

to hide the discovery. Happily, knowledge of this remarkable fact spread rapidly. Aristotle (384–332 B.C.E.) wrote about the concept and described what is now a standard proof. Aristotle's teacher, Plato (ca. 428–347 B.C.E.), described himself as having lived as an animal lives—that is, he lived without reasoning—until he learned of the concept.

It is significant that the Greeks so readily accepted the proof of the concept of incommensurability because that acceptance shows just how early truly abstract reasoning began to dominate Greek mathematical thinking. They were willing to accept a mathematical result that violated their worldview, their everyday experience, and their sense of aesthetics. They were willing to accept the idea of incommensurability because it was a logical consequence of other, previously established, mathematical results.

The Greeks often expressed their understanding of the concept by saying that the length of a diagonal of a square is incommensurable with the length of one of its sides.

Incommensurability is a perfect example of the kind of result that distinguished Greek mathematical thought from the mathematical thought of all other ancient cultures. In a practical sense incommensurability is a “useless” concept. We can always find a line segment whose length is so close to the length of the diagonal of the square as to be indistinguishable from the diagonal, and we can always



*Two lengths are commensurable if they are whole number multiples of a third length. For example, segments  $L_2$  and  $L_3$  are commensurable because  $L_2 = 2L_1$  and  $L_3 = 3L_1$ . Segment  $L_1$  is called a common measure of  $L_2$  and  $L_3$ . Not every pair of lengths is commensurable. The side of a square and its diagonal, for example, share no common measure; these segments are called incommensurable.*



## THE INCOMMENSURABILITY OF $\sqrt{2}$

The proof that the length of a diagonal of a square whose sides are 1 unit long is incommensurable with the length of a side of the square is one of the most famous proofs in the history of mathematics. The proof itself is only a few lines long. (Note that a square whose side is 1 unit long has a diagonal that is  $\sqrt{2}$  units long. This is just a consequence of the Pythagorean theorem.) In modern notation the proof consists of demonstrating that there do not exist natural numbers  $a$  and  $b$  such that  $\sqrt{2}$  equals  $a/b$ . The following *nonexistence proof* requires the reader to know the following two facts:

1. If  $a^2$  is divisible by 2 then  $a^2/2$  is even.
2. If  $b^2$  (or  $a^2$ ) is divisible by 2 then  $b$  (or  $a$ ) is even.

We begin by assuming the opposite of what we intend to prove: We suppose that  $\sqrt{2}$  is commensurable with 1—that is, we suppose that  $\sqrt{2}$  can be written as a fraction  $a/b$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are positive whole numbers. We also assume—and this is critical—that the fraction  $a/b$  is expressed in *lowest terms*. In particular, this means that  $a$  and  $b$  cannot both be even numbers. It is okay if one is even. It is okay if neither is even, but both cannot be even or our fraction would not be in lowest terms. (Notice that if we could find integers such that  $\sqrt{2} = a/b$ , and if the fraction were not in lowest terms we could certainly reduce it to lowest terms. There is, therefore, no harm in assuming that it is in lowest terms from the outset.) Here is the proof:

choose this segment with the additional property that its length and the length of a side of the square share a common measure. In a practical sense, commensurable lengths are always sufficient.

In a theoretical sense, however, the discovery of incommensurability was an important insight into mathematics. It showed that the Pythagorean idea that everything could be expressed in terms of whole number ratios was flawed. It showed that the mathematical landscape is more complex than they originally perceived it to be. It demonstrated the importance of rigor (as opposed to intuition) in the search for mathematical truths. Greek mathematicians soon moved away from Pythagorean concepts and toward a geometric view of mathematics and the world around them. How much of this was due to the discoveries of the Pythagoreans and how much was due to the success of later generations of geometers is not clear. In

Suppose  $a/b = \sqrt{2}$ .

Now solve for  $b$  to get

$$a/\sqrt{2} = b$$

Finally, square both sides.

$$a^2/2 = b^2$$

This completes the proof. Now we have to read off what the last equation tells us. First,  $a^2$  is evenly divisible by 2. (The quotient is  $b^2$ .) Therefore, by fact 2,  $a$  is even. Second, since  $a^2/2$  is even (this follows by fact 1)  $b^2$ —which is  $a^2/2$ —is also even. Fact 2 enables us to conclude that  $b$  is even as well. Since both  $a$  and  $b$  are even our assumption that  $a/b$  is in lowest terms cannot be true. This is the contradiction that we wanted. We have proved that  $a$  and  $b$  do not exist.

This proof resonated through mathematics for more than 2,000 years. It showed that intuition is not always a good guide to truth in mathematics. It showed that the number system is considerably more complicated than it first appeared. Finally, and perhaps unfortunately, mathematicians learned from this proof to describe  $\sqrt{2}$  and other similar numbers in terms of what they are *not*:  $\sqrt{2}$  is not expressible as a fraction with whole numbers in the numerator and denominator. Numbers like  $\sqrt{2}$  came to be called irrational numbers. A definition of irrational numbers in terms of what they *are* would have to wait until the late 19th century and the work of the German mathematician Richard Dedekind.

any case Greek mathematics does not turn back toward the study of algebra as a separate field of study for about 700 years.

## Geometric Algebra

The attempt by the Pythagoreans to reduce mathematics to the study of whole number ratios was not successful, and Greek mathematics soon shifted away from the study of number and ratio and toward the study of geometry. The Greeks did not study geometry only as a branch of knowledge; they used it as a tool to study everything from astronomy to the law of the lever. Geometry became the language that the Greeks used to describe and understand the world about them. It should come as no surprise, then, that the Greeks also learned to use the language of geometry to express



*Greek ruins in Alexandria, Egypt. Most of Greek mathematics was created outside of present-day Greece. Alexandria occupies an especially important place in the history of Greek mathematics.*

ideas that we learn to express algebraically. We call this geometric algebra, and it is an important part of the mathematical legacy of the ancient Greeks. Today the principal source of Greek ideas about geometric algebra is the set of books entitled *Elements* by Euclid of Alexandria, who lived in Alexandria, Egypt, in the third century B.C.E.

Little is known about Euclid. We do not know when he was born or when he died. We know that the institution where Euclid worked—it was called the Museum—was home to many of the most successful Greek mathematicians of the time. We know that many of the mathematicians who lived and worked at the school were born elsewhere. Perhaps the same can be said of Euclid.

Euclid is best remembered for having written one of the most popular textbooks of all time. Called *Elements*, it has been translated into most of the world's major languages over the last 2,000 years. In recent years it has fallen out of favor as a textbook, but

## ALGEBRA MADE VISIBLE

Today one of the first ideas that students learn as they begin to study algebra is that “multiplication distributes over addition.” This is called the distributive law and in symbols it looks like this:

$$x(y + z) = xy + xz$$

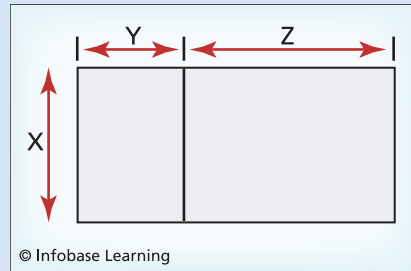
Though most of us eventually succeed in learning this rule, few of us could give a reason

why it might be true. The very first proposition that Euclid proves in book II of the *Elements* is exactly this statement, but it is expressed in the language of geometrical algebra. More than 2,000 years ago Euclid expresses the distributive law in the following words:

If there be two straight lines, and one of them be cut into any number of segments whatever, the rectangle contained by the two straight lines is equal to the rectangles contained by the uncut straight line and each of the segments.

*(Euclid. Elements. Translated by Sir Thomas L. Heath. Great Books of the Western World, vol. 11. Chicago: Encyclopaedia Britannica, 1952.)*

See the pictorial version of Euclid's statement. Notice that the illustration shows three rectangles, two smaller ones and a large one. (The large rectangle is made of the four outside line segments. The smaller rectangles lie inside the large one.) All three rectangles have the same height. We use  $x$  to represent the height of each of the rectangles. The rectangle on the left has length  $y$  and the rectangle on the right has length  $z$ . The length of the largest rectangle is  $y + z$ . Now we recall the formula for the area of a rectangle: Area = length  $\times$  width. Finally, we can express the idea that the area of the largest rectangle equals the area of the two smaller rectangles by using the algebraic equation given. When the distributive law is expressed geometrically the reason that it is true is obvious.



*Diagram of Euclid's proof that  $xy + xz = x(y + z)$*

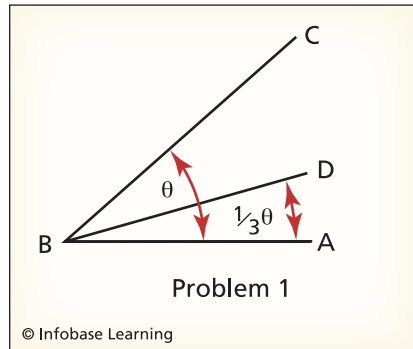
many high school treatments of plane geometry are still only simplified versions of parts of Euclid's famous work. To describe the *Elements* solely as a textbook, however, is to misrepresent its impact. The type of geometry described in Euclid's textbook—now called Euclidean geometry, though it was not Euclid's invention—dominated mathematical thought for 2,000 years. We now know that there are other kinds of geometry, but as late as 200 years ago many mathematicians and philosophers insisted that Euclidean geometry was the single true geometry of the universe. It was not until the 19th century that mathematicians began to realize that Euclidean geometry was simply one kind of geometry and that other, equally valid geometries exist.

The *Elements* was written in 13 brief books. Of special interest to us is the very brief book II, which lays out the foundations of geometric algebra. In book II we see how thoroughly geometric thinking pervaded all of Greek mathematics including algebra. For example, when we speak of unknowns,  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , we generally assume that these variables represent numbers. Part of learning elementary algebra involves learning the rules that enable us to manipulate these symbols as if they were numbers. Euclid's approach is quite different. In Euclid's time "variables" were not numbers. Euclid represented unknowns by line segments, and in his second book he establishes the rules that allow one to manipulate segments in the way that we would manipulate numbers. What we represent with equations, Euclid represented with pictures of triangles, rectangles, and other forms. Geometric algebra is algebra made visible.

Much of the geometry that one finds in the *Elements* is performed with a straightedge and compass. This is constructible mathematics in the sense that the truth of various mathematical statements can be demonstrated through the use of these implements. Though it would be hard to imagine simpler implements, the Greeks used these devices successfully to investigate many important mathematical ideas. But as with any set of techniques, the use of the straightedge and compass has its limitations. Although it is not immediately apparent, certain classes of problems cannot be solved by using straightedge and compass techniques. In fact, some of the most famous mathematical problems from antiquity are famous precisely because they *cannot* be solved with a straightedge and compass.

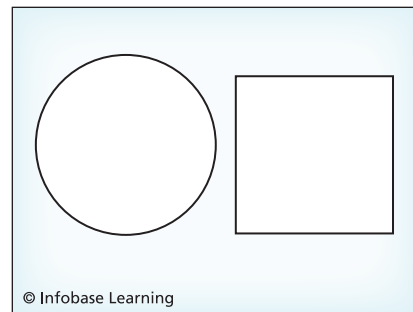
There are three classical geometry problems that are very important in the history of algebra. Their importance in geometry is that they remained unsolved for more than 2,000 years. They were not unsolved because they were neglected. These problems attracted some of the best mathematical minds for generation after generation. Interesting mathematical ideas and techniques were discovered as individuals grappled with these problems and searched for solutions, but in the end none of these mathematicians could solve any of the three problems as originally stated, nor could they show that solutions did not exist. The problems are as follows:

Problem 1: Given an arbitrary angle, divide the angle into three equal parts, *using only a straightedge and compass*.



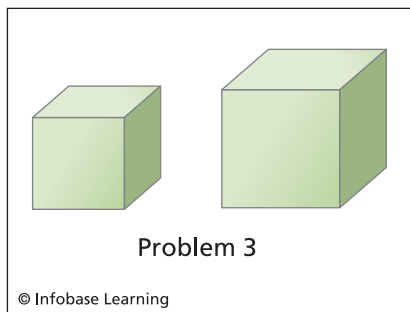
*Trisecting the angle: Given angle ABC, use a straightedge and compass to construct angle ABD so that the measure of angle ABD is one-third that of the measure of angle ABC.*

Problem 2: Given a circle, construct a square having the same area as the circle, *using only a straightedge and compass*.



*Squaring the circle: Given a circle and using only a straightedge and compass, construct a square of equal area.*

Problem 3: Given a cube, find the length of the side of a new cube whose volume is twice that of the original cube. Do this *using only a straightedge and compass*.



*Doubling the cube: Given a cube and using only a straightedge and compass, construct a second cube that has precisely twice the volume of the original cube.*

Notice that each problem has the same restriction: using only a straightedge and compass. This is critical. It is also critical to remember that the Greeks were not interested in approximate solutions to these problems. The Greeks could have easily constructed highly accurate *approximations* to a third of an angle, a squared circle, and a cube with a volume approximately twice as large as the given cube—and all with only a straightedge and compass. But approximations were not their goal. These ancient Greek geometers were searching for a method that would in theory give them the exact solution—not a good approximation to the solution—to each of the three problems.

These three problems are probably more important in the history of algebra than in the history of geometry. In algebra the search for the solutions of these problems gave birth to a new concept of what algebra is. In the 19th century, after some extraordinary breakthroughs in algebraic thought, these problems were disposed of once and for all. Nineteenth-century mathematicians discovered that the reason these problems had remained unsolved for 2,000 years is that they are unsolvable. Remember: This was proved by using algebra, not geometry. The ideas required to prove that these problems are unsolvable represented a huge step forward in the history of algebra.

The geometric algebra described by Euclid was logically rigorous, but it was too simple to be very useful. Elementary results

had been obtained by sophisticated techniques. The reliance on formal, very sophisticated geometric reasoning made it difficult to extend the ideas described by Euclid. A new approach to algebra was needed.

### Diophantus of Alexandria

Diophantus is often described as the father of algebra. He was, perhaps, the only one of the great Greek mathematicians to devote himself fully to the study of algebra as a discipline separate from geometry. We know little of his life. The dates of his birth and death are unknown. We do know that he lived in Alexandria, Egypt. It is generally believed that he was alive during the third century C.E., but even this is not certain; some scholars believe that he was alive during the second century C.E., and some believe that he was alive during the fourth century C.E. What are thought to be the facts of his life are usually summed up in this ancient mathematics problem:

God granted him to be a boy for the sixth part of his life, and adding a twelfth part to this, He clothed his cheeks with down; He lit him the light of wedlock after a seventh part, and five years after his marriage He granted him a son. Alas! Late-born child; after attaining the measure of half his father's life, chill Fate took him. After consoling his grief by this science of numbers for four years he ended his life.

*(Reprinted by permission of the publishers and the Trustees of Loeb Classical Library from Greek Anthology: Volume V, Loeb Classical Library. Volume L 86, translated by W. R. Paton, Cambridge, Mass.: Harvard University Press, 1918)*

By solving the (linear) equation that is described in the problem, we learn that Diophantus lived to be 84 years old.

Diophantus's contribution to algebra consists of two works, the more famous of which is entitled *Arithmetica*. The other is *On Polygonal Numbers*. Neither work exists in its entirety. *Arithmetica* originally consisted of 13 volumes. Six volumes were preserved in the original Greek, and in the 1970s previously unknown Arabic translations of four more volumes were discovered. Even less of



*On Polygonal Numbers* has come down to us; it is known through a set of excerpts.

*Arithmetica* is arranged much as the *Nine Chapters* and the Mesopotamian problem texts are. It is essentially a long list of problems. The exception occurs at the beginning of the first volume, in which he attempts to give an account of the foundations of algebra. This is historic because it is the first time that anyone tried to do this.

With respect to the number system that he uses, he describes rational numbers—numbers that can be represented as fractions with whole numbers in the numerator and the denominator—and negative numbers. He gives rules for working with negative numbers, and he seems comfortable enough with this system. But when solving problems, he clearly prefers solutions that are nonnegative.

Unlike the *Nine Chapters* and the other books mentioned previously, *Arithmetica* is largely devoid of nonmathematical references. There are no references to the division of corn, the height of a tree, or the area of a field, and approximate solutions, no matter how accurate, are not acceptable to Diophantus. In this sense *Arithmetica* is more philosophical than practical. Although Diophantus certainly knows about incommensurable (irrational) numbers, he does not consider them to be acceptable solutions to any of his equations.

Another important contribution that Diophantus makes to algebra is his use of symbolism. All of the works that we have examined so far, whether written in Mesopotamia, Egypt, or China, were of a rhetorical character—that is, everything is expressed in words. This format tends to hinder progress in mathematics because it obscures the ideas and techniques involved. Diophantus introduced abbreviations and some symbols into his work. We call this mixture of abbreviations, words, and a few symbols syncopated algebra. Diophantus's syncopated algebra lacks the compact form of contemporary algebraic equations. It is not especially easy to read, but he went further toward developing a specialized system of symbols than any of his predecessors.

The problems that Diophantus studied often had multiple solutions. The existence of multiple solutions for a single problem

would immediately catch the eye of any contemporary mathematician, but Diophantus usually seems not to care. If he can find even one solution he seems content. Did he know that in some cases other solutions exist? It is not always clear. On the other hand, Diophantus is very interested in *how* a solution is found, and he sometimes describes more than one method for solving the same problem. It is clear that algorithms are a primary focus for him.

It is tempting to see in Diophantus's exhausting list of problems and solutions the search for a rigorous theory of algebraic equations that is analogous to the highly developed system of geometry that the Greeks had developed centuries earlier. If that was his goal, he did not achieve it. There is no overarching concept to Diophantus's algebra. It is, instead, a collection of adroitly chosen problems, whose solutions more often than not depend on a clever trick rather than a deeper theoretical understanding. Nevertheless, *Arithmetica* served as a source of insight and inspiration for generations of Islamic and European mathematicians. And about 1,500 years after Diophantus wrote *Arithmetica*, his work inspired the French mathematician Pierre de Fermat to attempt to generalize one of the problems that he found in *Arithmetica* about representing one square as the sum of two squares. This gave rise to what is now called Fermat's last theorem, one of the most famous of all mathematical problems and one that was not solved until late in the 20th century.

Greek algebra—whether it is like that found in *Elements* or in *Arithmetica*—is characterized by a higher level of abstraction than that found in other ancient mathematically sophisticated cultures. Both the choice of problems and method of presentation were unique among the cultures of antiquity, and the Greek influence on future generations of Arab and European mathematicians was profound. New approaches to algebra that were eventually developed elsewhere, however, would prove to be equally important.

# 3

## ALGEBRA FROM INDIA TO NORTHERN AFRICA

The tradition of Greek mathematical research ended in the third century C.E. with the death of Hypatia (ca. 370–415) in Alexandria. Hypatia was a prominent scholar and mathematician. She wrote commentaries on the works of Diophantus, Apollonius, and Ptolemy, but all of her work has been lost. We know of her through the works and letters of other scholars of the time. Hypatia was murdered in a religious dispute. Shortly thereafter many of the scholars in Alexandria left, and mathematical research at Alexandria, the last of the great Greek centers of learning, ended.

Mathematics, however, continued to develop in new ways and in new locations. In the Western Hemisphere the Mayan civilization was developing a unique and advanced form of mathematics. We know of some of their accomplishments, but most of their work was destroyed by Spanish conquerors in the 16th century. Another new and important center of mathematical research developed on the Indian subcontinent, but before examining the accomplishments of these mathematicians it is important to say a few words about terminology.

The mathematical tradition that developed on the Indian subcontinent during this time is sometimes called Indian mathematics. It was not created entirely in what is now India. Some of it arose in what is now Pakistan, and, in any case, India was not united under a central government during the period of interest to us. There was no India in the modern sense. There are some histories of “Indian” mathematics that use the term *Hindu*

*mathematics*, but not all of the mathematicians who contributed to the development of this mathematical tradition were themselves Hindu. There are no other terms in general use. We use the terms *Indian mathematics* and *Hindu mathematics* interchangeably because they are the two common names for this mathematical tradition, but neither term is entirely satisfactory. We look forward to the time when better, more descriptive terminology is developed to describe the accomplishments of this creative and heterogeneous people.

There are widely varying claims made about the history of Indian mathematics. Some scholars think that a sophisticated Hindu mathematical tradition goes back several thousand years, but the evidence for this claim is indirect. Very few records from the more remote periods of Indian history have survived. Some of the earliest records of Indian mathematical accomplishments are the *Sulvasutras*, a collection of results in geometry and geometric algebra. The dating of these works is also a matter of dispute. Some scholars believe that they date to the time of Pythagoras, but others claim they were written several centuries after Pythagoras's death. Mathematically the *Sulvasutras* are, in any case, not especially sophisticated when compared with the Hindu works that are of most interest to us. In fact, it is their simplicity that is the best indicator that they preceded the works for which we do have reliable dates.

Despite their simplicity, the *Sulvasutras* contain many qualities that are characteristic of much of the Indian mathematical tradition. It is important to review these special characteristics, because Indian mathematics is quite distinct from that of the other mathematically sophisticated cultures that preceded it. Moreover, even when there is overlap between the mathematics of India and that of ancient Greece or Mesopotamia, it is clear that Indian mathematicians perceived mathematics differently. The mathematics of the Indians is often compared unfavorably to Greek mathematics, but such comparisons are not especially helpful. Hindu mathematics is better appreciated on its own terms. Mathematics occupied a different place in the culture of the Hindus than it did in the culture of the Greeks.

One characteristic of Hindu mathematics is that almost all of it—problems, rules, and definitions—is written in verse. This is true of the *Sulvasutras* and virtually all later works as well. Another characteristic property that we find in the *Sulvasutras* as well as later Hindu mathematics is that there are no proofs that the rules that one finds in the texts are correct. Ancient Indian texts contain almost no mathematical rigor, as we understand the term today. The rules that one finds in these texts were sometimes illustrated with one or more examples. The examples were sometimes followed with challenges directed to the reader, but there was little in the way of motivation or justification for the rules themselves. This was not simply a matter of presentation. The mathematicians who created this highly imaginative approach to mathematics must have had only a minimal interest in proving that the results they obtained were correct, because mistakes in the texts themselves often went unnoticed. Many of the best Hindu works contain a number of significant errors, but these works also contain important discoveries, some of which have had a profound effect on the entire history of mathematics.

Another important difference between Indian mathematics and the mathematics of other cultures with advanced mathematical traditions is that other cultures perceived mathematics as a separate field of study. In the Indian cultural tradition, mathematics was not usually treated as an independent branch of knowledge. There are very few ancient Sanskrit texts devoted solely to mathematics. Instead mathematical knowledge was usually conveyed in isolated chapters in larger works about astronomy. Astronomy and religion were very much intertwined in the classical culture of the Indian subcontinent. To many of the most important Hindu mathematicians, mathematics was a tool for better understanding the motions and relative locations of objects in the night sky. It was not a separate academic discipline.

### **Brahmagupta and the New Algebra**

The astronomer and mathematician Brahmagupta (ca. 598–ca. 670) was one of the most important of all Indian mathematicians. Not



*Sundial at the ancient observatory at Ujjain. For centuries, Ujjain was an important center for astronomical research. The unusual structures in the background were created to facilitate the making of accurate astronomical measurements.*

much is known about his life. It is known that he lived in Ujjain, a town located in what is now central India. In Brahmagupta's time Ujjain was home to an important astronomical observatory, and Brahmagupta was head of the observatory. Brahmagupta's major work is a book on astronomy, *Brahma-sphuta-siddhānta* (The opening of the universe). Written entirely in verse, Brahmagupta's masterpiece is 25 chapters long. Most of the book contains information about astronomical phenomena: the prediction of eclipses, the determination of the positions of the planets, the phases of the Moon, and so on. Just two of the chapters are about mathematics, but those two chapters contain a great deal of important algebra.

Brahmagupta's work, like that of other Hindu mathematicians, contains plenty of rules. Most are stated without proof; nor does he provide information about how he arrived at these rules or why he believes them to be true. Many rules are, however, followed by problems to illustrate how the rules can be applied. Here, for example, is Brahmagupta's "rule of inverse operation":

## 38 ALGEBRA

Multiplier must be made divisor; and divisor, multiplier; positive, negative and negative, positive; root [is to be put] for square; and square, for root; and first as converse for last.

*(Brahmagupta and Bhaskara. Algebra with Arithmetic and Mensuration. Translated by Henry Colebrook. London: John Murray, 1819)*

By modern standards this is a fairly terse explanation, but by the standards of the day it was comparatively easy reading. To understand why, it helps to know that Brahmagupta, like many Indian mathematicians, probably grew up reading just this type of explanation. Indian astronomical and mathematical knowledge was generally passed from one generation to the next within the same family. Each generation studied astronomy, mathematics, and astrology and contributed to the family library. Brahmagupta's father, for example, was a well-known astrologer. Mathematical writing and astronomical writing were important parts of Brahmagupta's family tradition. He would have been accustomed to this kind of verse, but he advanced well beyond what he inherited from his forebears.

One of the most important characteristics of Brahmagupta's work is his style of algebraic notation. It is, like that of Diophantus, syncopated algebra. Syncopated algebra uses specialized symbols and abbreviations of words to convey the ideas involved. For instance, Brahmagupta used a dot above a number to indicate a negative number. When formulating an equation containing one or more unknowns, Brahmagupta called each unknown a different color. His use of colors is completely analogous to the way that we are taught to use the letters  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  to represent variables when we first learn algebra. To simplify his notation he preferred to use an abbreviated form of each color word. One section of his book is even called Equations of Several Colors.

One consequence of his notation is that his mathematical prose is fairly abstract, and this characteristic is important for two reasons. First, a condensed, abstract algebraic notation often makes mathematical ideas more transparent and easy to express. Second, good algebraic notation makes adopting a very general and inclu-



sive approach to problem solving easier, and generality is just what Brahmagupta achieved.

Brahmagupta considered the equation that we would write as  $ax + by = c$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are integers (whole numbers), called coefficients, that could be positive, negative, or zero. The letters  $x$  and  $y$  denote the *variables* that are meant to represent whole number solutions to the equation. Brahmagupta's goal was to locate whole numbers that, when substituted for  $x$  and  $y$ , made the equation a true statement about numbers.

Brahmagupta's very broad understanding of what  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  represent stands in sharp contrast with the work of Diophantus. Diophantus preferred to consider only equations in which the coefficients are positive. This required Diophantus to break Brahmagupta's single equation into several special cases. If, for example,  $b$  was less than 0 in the preceding equation, Diophantus would add  $-b$  to both sides of the equation to obtain  $ax = -by + c$ . (If  $b$  is negative,  $-b$  is positive.) This equation, with the  $b$  transposed to the other side, was a distinct case to Diophantus, but Brahmagupta, because he did not distinguish between positive and negative coefficients, had to consider only the single equation  $ax + by = c$ . This allowed him to achieve a more general, more modern, and more powerful approach to the solution of algebraic equations. Furthermore, he accepted negative numbers as solutions, a concept with which his Greek predecessors had difficulty.

This highly abstract approach to the solution of algebraic equations is also characteristic of Brahmagupta's work with second-degree algebraic equations. When he solved second-degree algebraic equations, also called quadratic equations, he seemed to see all quadratic equations as instances of the single model equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ , where the coefficients  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  could represent negative as well as nonnegative numbers. Brahmagupta was willing to accept negative solutions here as well. He also accepted rational and irrational numbers as solutions. (A *rational number* can be represented as the quotient of two whole numbers. An *irrational number* is a number that cannot be represented as the quotient of two whole numbers.) This willingness to expand the number system to fit the problem, rather than to restrict the problem to



fit the number system, is characteristic of much of the best Indian mathematics.

Finally, Brahmagupta was interested in indeterminate equations. (An *indeterminate equation* is a single equation, or a system of equations, with many solutions.) When considering these types of problems he attempted to find all possible solutions.

Brahmagupta's work is algorithmic in nature. To Brahmagupta learning new math meant learning new techniques to solve equations. Today many of us think of mathematics as the search for solutions to difficult word problems, but mathematics has always been about more than finding the right solutions. The Greeks, for example, were often more concerned with discovering new properties of geometric figures than they were with performing difficult calculations. Brahmagupta was familiar with other approaches to mathematics, but he was motivated by problems that involved difficult calculations. He wanted to find calculating techniques that yielded answers, and he had a very broad idea of what constituted an answer. The *Brahma-sphuta-siddhānta* was quickly recognized by Brahmagupta's contemporaries as an important and imaginative work. It inspired numerous commentaries by many generations of mathematicians.

## Mahavira

The mathematician Mahavira (ca. 800–ca. 870), also known as Mahaviracharya, was one of those inspired by *Brahma-sphuta-siddhānta* (Compendium of the essence of mathematics). Mahavira lived in southern India. He was an unusual figure in the history of Hindu mathematics. He was not, for example, a Hindu. He was a member of the Jain religion. (Jainism is a small but culturally important religious sect in present-day India.) He was not an astronomer. His book, called *Ganita Sara Samgraha*, is the first book in the Indian mathematical tradition that confines its attention to pure mathematics. It is sometimes described as a commentary on Brahmagupta's work, but it is more than that. Mahavira's book is an ambitious attempt to summarize, improve upon, and teach Indian mathematical knowledge as he understood

it. Mahavira's book was very successful. It was widely circulated and used by students for several centuries.

There are traditional aspects of Mahavira's book. As with Brahmagupta's great work, *Brahma-sphuta-siddhānta*, Mahavira's book is written in verse and consists of rules and examples. The rules are stated without proof. Coupled with his very traditional presentation is a very modern approach to arithmetic. It is presented in a way that is similar to the way arithmetic is taught today.

In addition to his presentation of arithmetic, Mahavira demonstrated considerable skill manipulating the Hindu system of numeration: He constructed math problems whose answers read the same forward and backward. For example:  $14287143 \times 7 = 100010001$ . (Notice that the answer to the multiplication problem is a sort of numerical palindrome.) He was also interested in algebraic identities. (An identity is a mathematical statement that is true for all numbers.) An example of one of the identities that Mahavira discovered is  $a^3 = a(a + b)(a - b) + b^2(a - b) + b^3$ . These kinds of identities sometimes facilitate calculation. They also demonstrate how various algebraic quantities relate one to another.

Word problems were also important to Mahavira. He included numerous carefully crafted problems in *Ganita Sara Samgraha*. Some of the problems are elementary, but some require a fair bit of algebra to solve.

Mahavira exercises his algebraic insights on two other classes of problems. In one section of the book he studies combinatorics. Combinatorics, which generally requires a fairly extensive knowledge of algebra, deals with the way different combinations of objects can be chosen from a fixed set. It is the kind of knowledge that is now widely used in the study of probability. He shows, for example, that the number of ways  $r$  objects can be chosen from a set containing  $n$  objects is

$$\frac{n(n-1)(n-2) \dots (n-r+1)}{r(r-1)(r-2) \dots 2 \cdot 1}$$

where we have written his result in modern notation. This is an important formula that is widely used today.

The second class of algebra problems is geometric in origin. In Mahavira's hands even the geometry problems—and there are a number of them—are just another source of algebraic equations. For example, he attempts to find the dimensions of two triangles with the following properties: (1) the areas of the triangles are equal and (2) the perimeter of one is twice that of the other. This problem leads to some fairly sophisticated algebra and is a nice example of an indeterminate problem—it has many solutions.

More generally, there are several points worth noting about Mahavira's work. First, like Brahmagupta's work, Mahavira's writings are a highly syncopated approach to algebra. (Algebra is called syncopated when it is expressed in a combination of words, abbreviations, and a few specialized symbols.) Second, the emphasis in much of the book is on developing the techniques necessary to solve algebraic problems. It is a tour de force approach to solving various types of equations, but he provides no broader context into which we can place his results. Each problem stands on its own with no consideration given to a broader theory of equations. Third, there are no proofs or carefully developed logical arguments. He shows the reader results that he believes are important, but he often does not show the reader why he considers the results correct. His ideas are creative, but because of his lack of emphasis on mathematical proofs when he makes an error, even a glaring error, he sometimes fails to catch it. For example, when he tries to compute the area of an ellipse, he gets it wrong. Given the level of mathematics in Mahavira's time, this was admittedly a difficult problem. Perhaps he could not have solved the problem by using the mathematics available at the time, but with a more rigorous approach to the problem he might have been able to discover what the answer is *not*.

### **Bhaskara and the End of an Era**

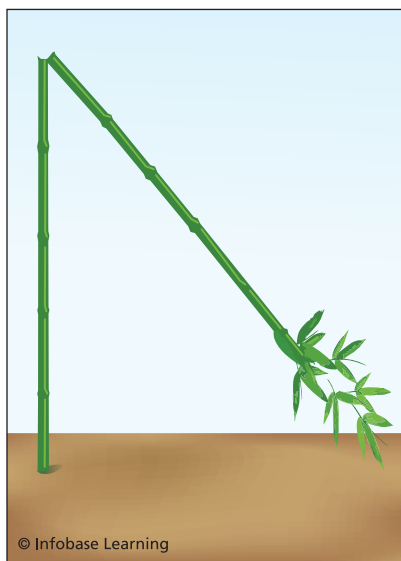
The discoveries of Brahmagupta, Mahavira, and many other mathematicians in the Indian tradition probably found their highest expression in the work of the mathematician and astronomer

Bhaskara (1114–ca. 1185). Bhaskara, also known as Bhaskaracharya and Bhaskara II, was the second prominent Indian mathematician of that name. (We will have no reason to refer to the first.) Bhaskara was born in southern India, in the city of Bijapur in the same general region in which Mahavira was born. Unlike Mahavira, but like Brahmagupta, Bhaskara was an astronomer. He eventually moved to Ujjain, where he became head of the astronomical observatory there. It was the same observatory that Brahmagupta had directed several centuries earlier.

Bhaskara's main work, *Siddhānta Siromani* (Head jewel of accuracy), is a book about astronomy and mathematics. It is divided into four sections, covering arithmetic, algebra, the celestial sphere, and various planetary calculations. Like the other texts we have considered, the *Siddhānta Siromani* is written in verse, although Bhaskara also provides an additional section written in prose that explains some of the mathematics found in the main body of the work. Sanskrit scholars have praised Bhaskara's work both for the quality of its poetry and for its mathematical content.

Bhaskara uses a highly syncopated algebraic notation. He solves a variety of determinate and indeterminate equations, and he is open to the possibility that the solutions to the equations that he solves may be negative as well as positive, and irrational as well as rational. He looks at very general first- and second-degree algebraic equations and seems comfortable with coefficients that are negative as well as positive. He even suggests special rules for doing arithmetic with certain irrational numbers. In many ways the work that Bhaskara did on second-degree algebraic equations is identical to work that high school students do today. Although this point may sound elementary, it was not. Mathematicians took millennia to extend their idea of number, their idea of solution, and their computational techniques to solve these types of equations. Furthermore, there are many aspects of Bhaskara's work with algebraic equations that were not surpassed anywhere in the world for several centuries.

The Leelavati and the Bijaganita, the two sections of his work that are mathematical in nature, are full of word problems to challenge the reader. One problem describes a bamboo plant, 32



*A problem by Bhaskara: Before the plant broke it was 32 cubits tall. After it breaks the distance from the top of the plant (now on the ground) to the base is 16 cubits. At what height did the break occur?*

cubits long, growing out of level ground. The wind springs up and breaks the plant. The top of the plant falls over, and the tip of the plant just touches the ground at a distance of 16 cubits from the base of the stalk. Bhaskara challenges the reader to compute the distance above the ground at which the stalk snapped. Interestingly, this same problem can also be found in ancient Chinese mathematical literature. (The answer is that the stalk snapped 12 cubits above the ground.)

Bhaskara's interest in the technical issues involved in solving particular equations allowed him to make great progress in special cases, and his work with the quadratic

equation was very general, but in most cases, the progress that Bhaskara achieves is incremental progress. He absorbs the work of his predecessors and extends it. Most of what he did, from his use of verse, to his indifference to the concept of proof, to his choice of problems, and to his preference for algebraic as opposed to geometric methods, is reminiscent of the work of Indian mathematicians who preceded him. What distinguishes his work is that it is generally more advanced than that of his predecessors. He expresses his ideas with greater clarity. His approach is more general, that is, more abstract, and so he sees more deeply into each problem. Finally his work is more complete. The *Siddhānta Siromani* influenced many generations of mathematicians. It was a major achievement. It is sometimes described as the most important mathematical text to emerge from the classical Indian mathematical tradition.

## POETRY AND ALGEBRA

It is an oft-repeated remark that in a poem, the poetry is the part that is lost in translation. If this is true for translations of verse between modern languages, the “loss of poetry” must be even more pronounced when ancient Sanskrit verse is translated to modern English. Nevertheless, skillful translations are the only means that most of us have of appreciating the poetry in which the mathematicians of ancient India expressed themselves. Here are two word problems, originally composed in verse in Sanskrit, by Bhaskara (followed by solutions using modern notation):

1.) One pair out of a flock of geese remained sporting in the water, and saw seven times the half of the square-root of the flock proceeding to the shore tired of the diversion. Tell me, dear girl, the number of the flock.

The algebraic equation to be solved is  $(7/2)\sqrt{x} = x - 2$ .

The solutions to the equation are  $x = 16$  and  $x = 1/4$ .

The only reasonable solution to the word problem is  $x = 16$ .

2.) Out of a heap of pure lotus flowers, a third part, a fifth and a sixth, were offered respectively to the gods Siva, Vishnu and the Sun; and a quarter was presented to Bhavānī. The remaining six lotuses were given to the venerable preceptor. Tell quickly the whole number of flowers. (ibid.)

The algebraic equation to be solved is

$$x - \left( \frac{1}{3} + \frac{1}{5} + \frac{1}{6} + \frac{1}{4} \right) x = 6$$

The solution is  $x = 120$ .

*(Brahmagupta and Bhaskara. Algebra with Arithmetic and Mensuration.  
Translated by Henry Colebrook. London: John Murray, 1819)*

## Islamic Mathematics

The origins of Indian mathematics, Egyptian mathematics, and Mesopotamian mathematics, to name three prominent examples, lie thousands of years in the past. Records that might help us understand how mathematics arose in these cultures are

sometimes too sparse to provide much insight. This is not the case with Islamic mathematics.

Historically Islamic culture begins with the life of Muhammad (570–632). Historical records are reasonably good. We can refer to documents by Islamic historians as well as their non-Muslim neighbors. We know quite a bit about how mathematics in general, and algebra in particular, arose in the Islamic East, and this is important, because within 200 years of the death of the Prophet Muhammad great centers of learning had been established. A new and important mathematical tradition arose. This new tradition had a profound influence on the history of mathematics: Algebra was the great contribution of Islamic mathematicians. But the term *Islamic mathematics* must be used with care.

*Islamic mathematics* is the term traditionally given to the mathematics that arose in the area where Islam was the dominant religion, but just as the term *Hindu mathematics* is not entirely



*The Great Mosque at Samarra was built about 60 miles (96 km) from Baghdad, which was where al-Khwārizmī made his home, at about the time that the mathematician lived.*



satisfactory, neither is *Islamic mathematics* quite the right term. Although Islam was the dominant religion in the region around Baghdad in what is now Iraq when algebraic research flourished, Jews and Christians also lived in the area. For the most part, they were free to practice their religions unmolested. Although most of the prominent mathematical scholars of the time followed the Islamic faith, there was also room for others at even the most prominent institutions of higher learning. A number of Christian scholars, for example, helped to translate the ancient Greek mathematical texts that were stored at the House of Wisdom in Baghdad, one of the great centers of learning at the time. There was a notable 10th-century Jewish mathematician who published “Islamic” mathematics named Abu ‘Otman Sahl ibn Bishr, ibn Habib ibn Hani; and one of the most prominent mathematicians of his day, Ali-sabi Thabit ibn Qurra al-Harrani, was a Sabean, a member of a sect that traced its roots to a religion of the ancient Mesopotamians. Despite this diversity, *Islamic mathematics* is the name often given to this mathematics because the Islamic faith had a strong cultural as well as religious influence.

Sometimes this mathematics is called Arabic, but not all the mathematicians involved were Arabic, either. Of the two choices, Arabic or Islamic mathematics, Islamic mathematics seems the more accurate description. Islam affected everything from governmental institutions to architectural practices. So we adopt the common practice of calling our subject Islamic mathematics, even though math, in the end, has no religious affiliation.

The history of Islamic mathematics begins in earnest with the life of al-Ma’mūn (786–833). Although al-Ma’mūn is an important figure in the history of algebra, he was no mathematician. He is best remembered for his accomplishments as a political leader. He was the son of the caliph Hārūn ar-Rashīd. (The caliphs were absolute rulers of their nations.) Ar-Rashīd had another son, al-Ma’mūn’s half brother, named al-Amīn. After the father’s death the two brothers, al-Ma’mūn and al-Amīn, led their respective factions in a brutal four-year civil war over succession rights to the caliphate. In the end al-Amīn lost both the war and his life.



As caliph, al-Ma'mūn proved to be a creative, if ruthless, political leader. He worked hard, though not entirely successfully, to heal the division that existed between the Shī'ite and Sunnite sects of Islam. In Baghdad he established the House of Wisdom, an important academic institution where Greek texts in mathematics, science, and philosophy were translated and disseminated. When these works could not be obtained within the caliphate, he obtained them from the libraries of Byzantium, a sometimes-hostile power. He established astronomical observatories, and he encouraged scholars to make their own original contributions. His work bore fruit. A new approach to algebra developed in Baghdad at this time.

### **Al-Khwārizmī and a New Concept of Algebra**

A number of mathematicians responded to al-Ma'mūn's words of encouragement and contributed to the development of a new concept of algebra. Mathematically speaking, it was a very creative time. One of the first and most talented mathematicians was named Mohammed ibn-Mūsā al-Khwārizmī (ca. 780–ca. 850). Al-Khwārizmī described what happened in these words:

[al-Ma'mūn] has encouraged me to compose a short work on Calculating by (the rules of) Completion and Reduction, confining it to what is easiest and most useful in arithmetic.

*(Al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā. Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī. Translated by Karpinski, Louis C. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1915)*

Al-Khwārizmī's *approach* to algebra was new and significant, but many of the results that he obtained were not. Nor was he the only mathematician of his time to use the new approach. In recent historical times scholars have discovered the work of another Islamic mathematician, Abd-al-Hamid ibn-Turk, who wrote a book about algebra that was similar to al-Khwārizmī's. This second text was written at about the same time that al-Khwārizmī's work was published. The existence of Abd-al-Hamid's book indicates

that some of the mathematical ideas described by al-Khwārizmī may not have originated with him. In that sense, al-Khwārizmī may, as Euclid was, have been more of a skilled expositor than an innovator. There is not enough information to know for sure. Nevertheless al-Khwārizmī's book had the greatest long-term influence. Even the author's name became part of the English language. Al-Khwārizmī's name was mispronounced often enough in Europe to take on the form *algorismi*, and this word was later shortened to the words *algorithm*, a specialized method for solving mathematical problems, and *algorism*, the so-called Arabic system of numerals. Furthermore, the second word in the title of one of al-Khwārizmī's books, *Hisāb al-jabr wa'l muqābala*, eventually found its way into English as the word *algebra*.

Al-Khwārizmī's book *Hisāb al-jabr wa'l muqābala* has little in common with those of Brahmagupta and Diophantus. For one thing, the problems that he solves are for the most part less advanced. Second, he avoids solutions that involve 0 or negative numbers. He avoids problems in indeterminate analysis—that is, problems for which multiple solutions exist—and he writes without any specialized algebraic notation. Not only does he avoid the use of letters or abbreviations for variables, he sometimes even avoids using numerals to represent numbers. He often prefers to write out the numbers in longhand. Even the motivation for Al-Khwārizmī's book was different from that of his predecessors. Diophantus seems to have had no motivation other than an interest in mathematics. Brahmagupta's motivation stemmed from his interest in mathematics and astronomy. But al-Khwārizmī wrote that al-Ma'mūn had encouraged him to develop a mathematics that would be of use in solving practical problems such as the “digging of canals” and the “division of estates.”

Much of the first half of al-Khwārizmī's book *Hisāb al-jabr* is concerned with the solution of second-degree algebraic equations, but his method is not nearly as general as Brahmagupta's. Unlike Brahmagupta, he does not perceive all quadratic equations as instances of a single general type. Instead, what we would call “the” quadratic equation he perceived as a large number of separate cases. For example, he considers quadratic equations,

such as  $x^2 = 5x$ , and he identifies the number 5 as a solution. (We would also recognize  $x = 0$  as a solution, but al-Khwārizmī does not acknowledge 0 as a legitimate solution.) Because he uses rhetorical algebra, that is, an algebra devoid of specialized, algebraic symbols, his description of the equation  $x^2 = 5x$  and its solution take some getting used to:

A square is equal to 5 roots. The root of the square then is 5, and 25 forms its square which, of course, equals five of its roots.

*(Al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā. Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī. Translated by Karpinski, Louis C. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1915)*

He plods his way from one special case to the next, and in this there is nothing new. At first it seems as if al-Khwārizmī, as his predecessor Brahmagupta and his far-away contemporary Mahavira did, sees algebra simply as a collection of problem-solving techniques. But this is not so. After establishing these results he shifts focus; it is this shift in focus that is so important to the history of algebra. After solving a number of elementary problems, he returns to the problems that he just solved and *proves* the correctness of his approach. In the field of algebra this is both new and very important.

Al-Khwārizmī's tool of choice for his proofs is geometry, but he is not interested in geometry as a branch of thought in the way that the ancient Greeks were. He is not interested in *studying* geometry; he wants to use it to provide a proof that his algebraic reasoning was without flaws. Recall that it was the lack of proofs in Hindu algebra that made it so difficult for those mathematicians to separate the true from the false. Al-Khwārizmī, by contrast, wanted to build his algebra on a solid logical foundation, and he was fortunate to have a ready-made model of deductive reasoning on hand: the classics of Greek geometry.

The geometry of the Greeks would certainly have been familiar to al-Khwārizmī. Throughout his life the translators associated with the House of Wisdom were busy translating ancient Greek works into Arabic, and there was no better example of careful

mathematical reasoning available anywhere in the world at this time than in the works of the Greeks. Their works are filled with rigorous proofs. Al-Khwārizmī had the concept for a rigorous algebra and a model of mathematical rigor available. It was his great insight to combine the two into something new.

Al-Khwārizmī's interest in developing procedures for computing with square roots also bears mentioning. He begins with the very simplest examples, among them the problem of multiplying the square root of 9 by the number 2. Here is how he describes the procedure:

Take the root of nine to be multiplied. If you wish to double the root of nine you proceed as follows: 2 by 2 gives 4, which you multiply by 9, giving 36. Take the root of this, i.e. 6, which is found to be two roots of nine, i.e. the double of three. For three, the root of nine, added to itself gives 6.

*(Al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā. Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī. Translated by Karpinski, Louis C. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1915)*

In our notation we express this idea as  $2\sqrt{9} = \sqrt{4 \cdot 9} = \sqrt{36} = 6$ , which again emphasizes the importance and utility of our modern system of notation. He extends this simple numerical example into several more general algebraic formulas. For example, we would express one of his rhetorical equations as follows:  $3\sqrt{x} = \sqrt{9x}$ .

It is not clear why al-Khwārizmī avoided the use of any sort of algebraic symbolism. Without any specialized algebraic notation his work is not easy to read despite the fact that he is clearly a skilled expositor. Al-Khwārizmī's work had an important influence on the many generations of mathematicians living in the Near East, Northern Africa, and Europe. On the positive side, his concept of incorporating geometric reasoning to buttress his algebraic arguments was widely emulated. On the negative side, his highly rhetorical approach would prove a barrier to rapid progress. What is most important is that Al-Khwārizmī's work established a logical foundation for the subject he loved. His work set the standard for rigor in algebra for centuries.

### A PROBLEM AND A SOLUTION

The following is a problem that was posed and solved by al-Khwārizmī in his algebra. It is a nice example of rhetorical algebra, that is, algebra expressed entirely in words and without the use of specialized algebraic symbols.

If you are told, “ten for six, how much for four?” then *ten* is the measure; *six* is the price; the expression *how much* implies the unknown number of the quantity; and *four* is the number of the sum. The number of the measure, which is *ten*, is inversely proportionate to the number of the sum, namely, *four*. Multiply, therefore, ten by four, that is to say, the two known proportionate numbers by each other; the product is forty. Divide this by the other known number, which is that of the price, namely, six. The quotient is six and two-thirds; it is the unknown number, implied in the words of the question *how much*? it is the quantity, and inversely proportionate to the six, which is the price.

*(Al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā. Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī. Translated by Louis C. Karpinski, New York: The Macmillan Company, 1915)*

In our notation al-Khwārizmī solved the problem that we would express as  $10/6 = x/4$ .

### Omar Khayyám, Islamic Algebra at Its Best

The astronomer, poet, mathematician, and philosopher Omar Khayyám (ca. 1050–1123) was perhaps the most important of all Islamic mathematicians after al-Khwārizmī. Omar was born in Neyshābūr (Nishāpūr) in what is now northeastern Iran. He also died in Neyshābūr, and between his birth and death he traveled a great deal. Political turbulence characterized Omar's times, and moving from place to place was sometimes a matter of necessity.

Omar was educated in Neyshābūr, where he studied mathematics and philosophy. As a young man he moved about 500 miles (800 km) to Samarqand, which at the time was a major city, located in what is now Uzbekistan. It was in Samarqand that he became

well known as a mathematician. Later he accepted an invitation to work as an astronomer and director of the observatory at the city of Esfahan, which is located in central Iran. He remained there for about 18 years, until the political situation became unstable and dangerous. Funding for the observatory was withdrawn, and Omar moved to the city of Merv, now Mary, in present-day Turkmenistan. During much of his life Omar was treated with suspicion by many of his contemporaries for his freethinking and unorthodox ideas. He wrote angrily about the difficulty of doing scholarly work in the environments in which he found himself, but in retrospect he seems to have done well despite the difficulties.

Omar described algebra, a subject to which he devoted much of his life, in this way:

By the help of God and with His precious assistance, I say that Algebra is a scientific art. The objects with which it deals are absolute numbers and measurable quantities which, though themselves unknown, are related to “things” which are known, whereby the determination of the unknown quantities is possible. Such a thing is either a quantity or a unique relation, which is only determined by careful examination. What one searches for in the algebraic art are the relations which lead from the known to the unknown, to discover which is the object of Algebra as stated above. The perfection of this art consists in knowledge of the scientific method by which one determined numerical and geometric quantities.

(Kasir; Daoud S. *The Algebra of Omar Khayyám*. New York: Columbia University Press, 1931. *Used with permission*)

This is a good definition for certain kinds of algebra even today, almost a thousand years later. The care with which the ideas in the definition are expressed indicates that the author was a skilled writer in addition to being a skilled mathematician, but he is generally remembered as either one or the other. In the West, Omar Khayyám is best remembered as the author of *The Rubáiyát of Omar Khayyám*, a collection of poems. This collection of poems was organized, translated into English, and published in the 19th

No.	Month	Length
1	Farvardin	31
2	Ordibehesht	31
3	Khordad	31
4	Tir	31
5	Mordad	31
6	Shahrivar	31
7	Mehr	30
8	Aban	30
9	Azar	30
10	Dey	30
11	Bahman	30
12	Esfand	29 or 30

© Infobase Learning

*A small group of scientists, of which Omar Khayyám was the most prominent member, devised the Jalali calendar. With some modest modifications, this has become today's Persian calendar (pictured above).*

century. It has been in print ever since and has now been translated into all the major languages of the world. The *Rubáiyát* is a beautiful work, but Omar's skill as a poet was not widely recognized in his own time, nor is it the trait for which he is best remembered in Islamic countries today.

Omar's contemporaries knew him as a man of extraordinarily broad interests. Astronomy, medicine, law, history, philosophy, and mathematics were areas in which he distinguished himself. He made especially important contributions to mathematics and to the revision of the calendar. His revision of the calendar earned him a certain amount of fame because the calendar in use at the time was inaccurate in the sense that the calendar year and the astronomical year were of different lengths. As a consequence over time the seasons shifted to different parts of the calendar year. This variability made using the calendar for practical, seasonal predictions difficult. Correcting the calendar involved collecting better astronomical data and then using this data to make the necessary computations. This is what Omar did. It was an important contribution because his calendar was extremely accurate, and its accuracy made it extremely useful.

In the history of algebra, Omar Khayyám is best remembered for his work *Al-jabr w'al muqābala* (Demonstration concerning the completion and reduction of problems; this work is also known as Treatise on demonstration of problems of algebra). The *Al-jabr w'al muqābala* is heavily influenced by the ideas and works of Al-Khwārizmī, who had died two centuries before Omar wrote his algebra. As with al-Khwārizmī, Omar does not see all qua-

dratic equations as instances of the single equation  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ . Instead, he, too, divides quadratic equations into distinct types, for example, “a number equals a square,” which we would write as  $x^2 = c$ ; “a square and roots equal a number,” which we would write as  $x^2 + bx = c$ ; and “a square and a number equal a root,” which we would write  $x^2 + c = x$ . (He made a distinction, for example, between  $x^2 + bx = c$  and  $x^2 + c = bx$  because Omar also prefers to work with positive coefficients only.)

Omar even borrows al-Khwārizmī’s examples. He uses the same equation,  $x^2 = 5x$ , that al-Khwārizmī used in his book, and there are the by-now standard geometric demonstrations involving the proofs of his algebraic results. All of this is familiar territory and would have seemed familiar even to al-Khwārizmī. But then Omar goes on to consider equations of the third degree—that is, equations that we would write in the form  $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ .

Omar classifies third-degree equations by using the same general scheme that he used to classify equations of the second degree, and then he begins to try to solve them. He is unsuccessful in finding an algebraic method of obtaining a solution. He even states that one does not exist. (A method was discovered several centuries later in Europe.) Omar does, however, find a way to represent the solutions by using geometry, but his geometry is no longer the geometry of the Greeks. He has moved past traditional Euclidean geometry. Omar uses numbers to describe the properties of the curves in which he is interested. As he does so he broadens the subject of algebra and expands the collection of ideas and techniques that can be brought to bear on any problem.

Omar’s synthesis of geometric and algebraic ideas is in some ways modern. When he discusses third-degree algebraic equations, equations that we would write as  $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ , he represents his ideas geometrically. (Here  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$  and  $d$  represent numbers and  $x$  is the unknown.) For example, the term  $x^3$ , “ $x$  cubed,” is interpreted as a three-dimensional cube. This gives him a useful conceptual tool for understanding third-degree algebraic equations, but it also proves to be a barrier to further progress. The problem arises when he tries to extend his analysis to fourth-degree equations, equations that we would write as  $ax^4 + bx^3 + cx^2 + dx + e = 0$ . Because he cannot imagine a four-dimensional figure,



his method fails him, and he questions the reality of equations of degree higher than 3.

To his credit Omar was aware of the close relationship between algebraic equations and the number system. However, his narrow concept of number prevented him from identifying many solutions that Hindu mathematicians accepted without question. This may seem to be a step backward, but his heightened sense of rigor was an important step forward. There are important relationships between the degree of an algebraic equation and the properties of the numbers that can appear as solutions. (The *degree* of an equation is the largest exponent that appears in it. Fourth-degree equations, for example, contain a variable raised to degree 4, and no higher power appears in the equation.) In fact, throughout much of the history of mathematics it was the study of algebraic equations that required mathematicians to consider more carefully their concept of what a number is and to search for ways in which the number system could be expanded to take into account the types of solutions that were eventually discovered. Omar's work in algebra would not be surpassed anywhere in the world for the next several centuries.

The work of al-Khwārizmī and Omar exemplifies the best and most creative aspects of Islamic algebra. In particular, their synthesis of algebra and geometry allowed them to think about algebraic questions in a new way. Their work yielded new insights into the relations that exist between algebra and geometry. They provided their successors with new tools to investigate algebra, and they attained a higher standard of rigor in the study of algebra. Although Indian mathematicians sometimes achieved more advanced results than their Islamic counterparts, Indian mathematicians tended to develop their mathematics via analogy or metaphor. These literary devices can be useful for discovering new aspects of mathematics, but they are of no use in separating the mathematically right from the mathematically wrong. Islamic mathematicians emphasized strong logical arguments—in fact, they seemed to enjoy them—and logically rigorous arguments are the only tools available for distinguishing the mathematically true from the mathematically false. It is in this sense that the

## LEONARDO OF PISA

There was one prominent European mathematician during the period in which Islamic mathematics flourished. He received his education in northern Africa from an Islamic teacher. As a consequence, he owed much of his insight to Islamic mathematics. He was the Italian mathematician Leonardo of Pisa, also known as Fibonacci (ca. 1170–after 1240). Leonardo's father, Guglielmo, was a government official in a Pisan community situated in what is now Algeria. During this time Leonardo studied mathematics with a Moor. (The Moors were an Islamic people who conquered Spain.) From his teacher he apparently learned both algebra and the Hindu base 10 place-value notation. He later wrote that he enjoyed the lessons. Those lessons also changed his life.

As a young man Leonardo traveled throughout North Africa and the Middle East. During his travels he learned about other systems of notation and other approaches to problem solving. He eventually settled down in Pisa, Italy, where he received a yearly income from the city.

Leonardo produced a number of works on mathematics. He described the place-value notation and advocated for its adoption. His efforts helped to spread news of the system throughout Europe. (Leonardo only used place-value notation to express whole numbers. He did not use the decimal notation to write fractions.) His description of the Indian system of notation is his most long-lasting contribution, but he also discovered what is now known as the Fibonacci series, and he was renowned for his skill in algebra as well. He studied, for example, the equation that we would write as  $x^3 + 2x^2 + 10x = 20$ . This equation was taken from the work of Omar Khayyám. In his analysis Leonardo apparently recognizes that the solution he sought was not a simple whole number or fraction. He responds by working out an approximation—and he recognizes that his answer *is* an approximation—that is accurate to the ninth decimal place. Leonardo, however, expressed his answer as a base 60 fraction. Unfortunately Leonardo does not explain how he found his answer, an approximation that would set the European standard for accuracy for the next several centuries.

algebra developed by the Islamic mathematicians is—especially during the period bracketed by the lives of al-Khwārizmī and Omar—much closer to a modern conception of algebra than is that of the Indians.

# 4

## ALGEBRA AS A THEORY OF EQUATIONS

Art, music, literature, science, and mathematics flourished in Europe during the Renaissance, which had its origins in 14th-century Italy and spread throughout Europe over the succeeding three centuries. Just as art, music, and science changed radically during the Renaissance, all pre-Renaissance mathematics is profoundly different from the post-Renaissance mathematics of Europe. The new mathematics began with discoveries in algebra.

Many of the best European mathematicians of this period were still strongly influenced by the algebra of al-Khwārizmī, but in the space of a few years Italian mathematicians went far beyond all of the algorithms for solving equations that had been discovered anywhere since the days of the Mesopotamians. Mathematicians found solutions to whole classes of algebraic equations that had never been solved before. Their methods of solution were, by our standards, excessively complicated. The algorithms developed by Renaissance era mathematicians were also difficult and sometimes even counterintuitive. A lack of insight into effective notation, poor mathematical technique, and an inadequate understanding of what a number is sometimes made recognizing that they had found a solution difficult for them. Nevertheless, many problems were solved for the first time, and this was important, because these problems had resisted solution for thousands of years.

The new algorithms also exposed large gaps in the understanding of these mathematicians. To close those gaps they would have

to expand their concept of number, their collection of problem solving techniques, and their algebraic notation. The algebraic solution of these new classes of problems was a major event in the history of mathematics. In fact, many historians believe that the modern era in mathematics begins with publication of the Renaissance era algebra book *Ars magna*, about which we will have more to say later.

To appreciate what these Renaissance era mathematicians accomplished, we begin by examining a simple example. The example is a quadratic equation, an algebraic equation of second degree. The remarks we make about quadratic equations guide our discussion of the more complicated equations and formulas used by the mathematicians of the Renaissance. Our example is taken from the work of al-Khwārizmī. He was an expert at this type of problem, but because his description is a little old-fashioned, and because we also want to discuss his problem in modern notation, we introduce a little terminology first. A quadratic, or second-degree, equation is any equation that we can write in the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ . In this equation, the letter  $x$  is the unknown. The number or numbers that, when substituted for  $x$ , make the equation a true statement are called the *roots* of the equation, and the equation is solved when we find the root or roots. The letters  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are the *coefficients*. They represent numbers that we assume are known. In the following excerpt, al-Khwārizmī is describing his method of solving the equation  $x^2 + 21 = 10x$ . In this example the coefficient  $a$  equals 1. The coefficient  $b$  is -10. (Al-Khwārizmī prefers to transpose the term  $-10x$  to the right side of the equation because he does not work with negative coefficients.) Finally, the  $c$  coefficient equals 21. Here is al-Khwārizmī's method for solving the equation  $x^2 + 21 = 10x$ :

A square and 21 units equal 10 roots. . . . The solution of this type of problem is obtained in the following manner. You take first one-half of the roots, giving in this instance 5, which multiplied by itself gives 25. From 25 subtract the 21 units to which we have just referred in connection with the squares. This gives 4, of which you extract the square root, which is 2. From the half

of the roots, or 5, you take 2 away, and 3 remains, constituting one root of this square which itself is, of course, 9.

(*Al-Khwārizmī*, *Mohammed ibn-Mūsā*. Robert of Chester's Latin Translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī. *Translated by Karpinski*, Louis C. New York: The Macmillan Company, 1915)

Al-Khwārizmī has given a rhetorical description of an application of the algorithm called the quadratic formula. Notice that what al-Khwārizmī is doing is “constructing” the root, or solution of the equation, from a formula that uses the coefficients of the equation as input. Once he has identified the coefficients he can, with the help of his formula, compute the root. We do the same thing when we use the quadratic formula, although both our formula and our concept of solution are more general than those of al-Khwārizmī. In fact, we learn two formulas when we learn to solve equations of the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$ . The first is

$$x = \frac{-b}{2a} + \frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}, \text{ and the second is } x = \frac{-b}{2a} - \frac{\sqrt{b^2 - 4ac}}{2a}. \text{ These}$$

are the formulas that allow us to identify the roots of a quadratic equation provided we know the coefficients.

Various rhetorical forms of these formulas were known to al-Khwārizmī and even to Mesopotamian mathematicians. They are useful for finding roots of second-degree equations, but they are useless for computing the roots of an equation whose degree is not 2. Until the Renaissance, *no one in the history of humankind* had found corresponding formulas for equations of degree higher than 2. No one had found a formula comparable to the quadratic formula for a third-degree equation, that is, an equation of the form  $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ , and  $d$  are the coefficients. This was one of the great achievements of the Renaissance.

There is one more point to notice about the preceding formulas for determining the solutions to the second-degree equations: They are exact. These formulas leave no uncertainty at all about the true value for  $x$ . We can compare these formulas with the solution that Leonardo of Pisa obtained for the third-degree equation given in the preceding chapter. His approximation was accurate

to the billionth place. This is far more accurate than he (or we) would need for any practical application, but there is still some uncertainty about the true value for  $x$ .

*From a practical point of view*, Leonardo completely solved his problem, but from a theoretical point of view, there is an important distinction between his answer and the exact answer. His approximation is a rational number. It can be expressed as a quotient of two whole numbers. The exact answer, the number that he was searching for, is an irrational number. It *cannot* be expressed as a quotient of two whole numbers. Leonardo's solution was, for the time, a prodigious feat of calculation, but it fails to communicate some of the mathematically interesting features of the exact solution. Leonardo's work shows us that even during the Middle Ages there were algorithms that enabled one to compute highly accurate *approximations* to at least some equations of the third degree, but there was no general algorithm for obtaining exact solutions to equations of the third degree.

## The New Algorithms

The breakthrough that occurred in Renaissance Italy was unrelated to finding useful approximations to algebraic equations. It involved the discovery of an algorithm for obtaining exact solutions of algebraic equations.

The discovery of exact algorithms for equations of degree higher than 2 begins with an obscure Italian academic named Scipione del Ferro (1465–1526). Little is known of del Ferro, nor are scholars sure about precisely what he discovered. Some historians believe that he was educated at the University of Bologna, but there are no records that indicate that he was. What is certain is that in 1496 he joined the faculty at the University of Bologna as a lecturer in arithmetic and geometry and that he remained at the university for the rest of his life.

Uncertainty about del Ferro's precise contribution to the history of algebra arises from the fact that he did not publish his ideas and discoveries about mathematics. He was not secretive. He apparently shared his discoveries with friends. Evidently he learned



*Ancient buildings in Bologna, Italy. During the Renaissance, Bologna was an important center for mathematical research.* (EdLab at Teachers College, Columbia University)

how to solve certain types of cubic equations. These equations had resisted exact solution for thousands of years, so del Ferro's discovery was a momentous one. Del Ferro did not learn how to solve every cubic equation, however.

To appreciate the difficulties that they faced, it is important to keep in mind that European mathematicians of del Ferro's time did not use negative coefficients, so they did not perceive a cubic equation as a single case as we do today. Today we say that a cubic equation is *any* equation that can be written in the form  $ax^3 + bx^2 + cx + d = 0$ . But where we see unity, they saw a diversity of types of cubic equations. They classified equations by the side of the equals sign where each coefficient was written. Where we would write a negative coefficient they carefully transposed the term containing the negative coefficient to the other side of the equation so that the only coefficients they considered were positive. For example,



they looked at the equations  $x^3 + 2x = 1$  and  $x^3 = 2x + 1$  as separate cases. Furthermore, they would also consider any cubic equation with an  $x^2$  term, such as  $x^3 + 3x^2 = 1$ , as a case separate from, say,  $x^3 + 2x = 1$ , because the former has an  $x^2$  term and no  $x$  term, whereas the latter equation has an  $x$  term but no  $x^2$  term. The number of such separate cases for a third-degree equation is quite large.

Although we cannot be sure exactly what types of cubic equations del Ferro solved, many scholars believe that he learned to solve one or both of the following types of third-degree algebraic equations: (1)  $x^3 + cx = d$  and/or (2)  $x^3 = cx + d$ , where in each equation the letters  $c$  and  $d$  represent positive numbers. Whatever del Ferro learned, he passed it on to one of his students, Antonio Maria Fior.

News of del Ferro's discovery eventually reached the ears of a young, creative, and ambitious mathematician and scientist named Niccolò Fontana (1499–1557), better known as Tartaglia. Tartaglia was born in the city of Brescia, which is located in what is now northern Italy.

It was a place of great wealth when Tartaglia was a boy, but Tartaglia did not share in that wealth. His father, a postal courier, died when Tartaglia was young, and the family was left in poverty. It is often said that Tartaglia was self-taught. In one story the 14-year-old Tartaglia hires a tutor to help him learn to read but has only enough money to reach the letter  $k$ . In 1512, when Tartaglia was barely a teenager, the city was sacked by the French. There were widespread looting and violence. Tartaglia suffered severe saber wounds to his face, wounds



*Niccolò Fontana, also known as Tartaglia. His discovery of a method for solving arbitrary third-degree equations had a profound effect on the history of mathematics. (Smithsonian Institution)*



that left him with a permanent speech impediment. (Tartaglia, a name which he took as his own, began as a nickname. It means “stammerer.”)

When Tartaglia heard the news that del Ferro had discovered a method of solving certain third-degree equations, he began the search for his own method of solving those equations. What he discovered was a method for solving equations of the form  $x^3 + px^2 = q$ . Notice that this is a different type of equation from those that had been solved by using del Ferro’s method, but both algorithms have something important in common: They enable the user to construct solution(s) using only the coefficients that appear in the equation itself. Tartaglia and del Ferro had found formulas for third-degree equations that were similar in concept to the quadratic formula.

When Tartaglia announced his discovery, a contest was arranged between him and del Ferro’s student, Antonio Maria Fior. Each mathematician provided the other with a list of problems, and each was required to solve the other’s equations within a specified time. Although he initially encountered some difficulty, Tartaglia soon discovered how to extend his algorithm to solve those types of problems proposed by Fior, but Fior did not discover how to solve the types of problems proposed by Tartaglia. It was a great triumph for Tartaglia.

Tartaglia did not stop with his discoveries in algebra. He also wrote a physics book, *Nova Scientia* (A new science), in which he tried to establish the physical laws governing bodies in free fall, a subject that would soon play an important role in the history of science and mathematics. Tartaglia had established himself as an important mathematician and scientist. He was on his way up.

It is at this point that the exploits of the Italian gambler, physician, mathematician, philosopher, and astrologer Girolamo Cardano (1501–76) become important to Tartaglia and the history of science. Unlike del Ferro, who published nothing, Cardano published numerous books describing his ideas, his philosophies, and his insights on every subject that aroused his curiosity, and he was a very curious man. He published the first book on probability. As a physician he published the first clinical description of

typhus, a serious disease that is transmitted through the bite of certain insects. He also wrote about philosophy, and he seemed to enjoy writing about himself as well. His autobiography is entitled *De propria vita* (Book of my life). In the field of algebra, Cardano did two things of great importance: He wrote the book *Ars magna* (Great art), the book that many historians believe marks the start of the modern era in mathematics, and he helped an impoverished boy named Lodovico Ferrari (1522–65).

At the age of 14 Ferrari applied to work for Cardano as a servant, but unlike most servants of the time, Ferrari could read and write. Impressed, Cardano hired him as his personal secretary instead. It soon became apparent to Cardano that his young secretary had great potential, so Cardano made sure that Ferrari received an excellent university education. Ferrari learned Greek, Latin, and mathematics at the university where Cardano lectured, and when Ferrari was 18, Cardano resigned his post at the university in favor of his former secretary. At the age of 18 Ferrari was lecturing in mathematics at the University of Milan.

Meanwhile Tartaglia's success had attracted Cardano's attention. Although Tartaglia had discovered how to solve cubic equations, he had not made his algorithm public. He preferred to keep it secret. Cardano wanted to know the secret. Initially he sent a letter requesting information about the algorithm, but Tartaglia refused the request. Cardano, a capable mathematician in his own right and a very persistent person, did not give up. He continued to write to Tartaglia. They argued. Still Tartaglia would not tell, and still Cardano persisted. Their positions, however, were not equal. Tartaglia, though well known, was not well off. By contrast, Cardano was wealthy and well connected. He indicated that he could help Tartaglia find a prestigious position, which Tartaglia very much wanted. Cardano invited Tartaglia to his home, and, in exchange for a promise that Cardano would tell no one, Tartaglia shared his famous algorithm with his host.

It was a mistake, of course. Tartaglia is said to have recognized his error almost as soon as he made it. Cardano was of no help in finding Tartaglia a position, but with the solution to the third-degree equation firmly in hand, Cardano asked his former servant,

secretary, and pupil, Ferrari, to solve the general fourth-degree equation, and Ferrari, full of energy and insight, did as he was asked. He discovered a formula that enabled the user to construct the root(s) to a fourth-degree equation using only the coefficients that appeared in the equation itself. Now Cardano knew how to solve both third- and fourth-degree equations, and that is the information Cardano published in *Ars magna*.

Tartaglia was furious. He and Cardano exchanged accusations and insults. The whole fight was very public, and much of the public was fascinated. Eventually a debate was arranged between Tartaglia and Ferrari, who was an intensely loyal man who never forgot who gave him help when he needed it. It was a long debate, and it did not go well for Tartaglia. The debate was not finished when Tartaglia left. He did not return. Tartaglia felt betrayed and remained angry about the affair for the rest of his life.

In some ways Cardano's *Ars magna* is an old-fashioned book. It is written very much in the style of al-Khwārizmī: It is a purely rhetorical work, long on prose and bereft of algebraic notation. That is one reason that it is both tedious and difficult for a modern reader to follow. In the manner of al-Khwārizmī, Cardano avoids negative coefficients by transposing terms to one side of the equation or another until all the numbers appearing in the equation are nonnegative. In this sense, *Ars magna* belongs to an earlier age.

The significance of *Ars magna* lies in three areas. First, the solutions that arose in the course of applying the new algorithms were often of a very complicated nature. For example, numbers such

as  $\sqrt[3]{287\frac{1}{2}} + \sqrt{80449\frac{1}{4}} + \sqrt[3]{287\frac{1}{2}} - \sqrt{80449\frac{1}{4}} - 5$ , a solution that Cardano derives in his book for a fourth-degree equation, inspired many mathematicians to reconsider their ideas of what a number is. This turned out to be a very difficult problem to resolve, but with the new algorithms, it was no longer possible to avoid asking the question.

Second, Cardano's book marks the first time since the Mesopotamians began pressing their ideas about quadratic equations into clay slabs that anyone had published general methods for obtaining exact solutions to equations higher than second degree. Algebra had always seemed to hold a lot of promise, but its

## ALGEBRA AS A TOOL IN SCIENCE

During the Renaissance great progress was made in obtaining exact solutions to algebraic equations. There was a certain excitement associated with the work of Tartaglia, Ferrari, and others because these mathematicians were solving problems that had resisted solution for millennia. There was also a highly abstract quality to their work: It was now possible to solve fourth-degree equations, for example, but opportunities to *use* fourth-degree equations to solve practical problems were not especially numerous.

There was, however, another trend that was occurring during the Renaissance, the application of algebra to the solution of problems in science. There is no better example of a scientist's reliance on algebra as a language in which to express ideas than in the work of the Italian scientist, mathematician, and inventor Galileo Galilei (1564–1642).

One of Galileo's best-known books, *Dialogues Concerning Two New Sciences*, is filled with algebra. It is not a book about algebra. It is a book about science, in which Galileo discusses the great scientific topics of his time: motion, strength of materials, levers, and other topics that lie at the heart of classical mechanics. To express his scientific ideas he uses a rhetorical version of an algebraic function.

In the following quotation, taken from *Dialogues*, Galileo is describing discoveries he had made about the ability of objects to resist fracture:

Prisms and cylinders which differ in both length and thickness offer resistances to fracture . . . which are directly proportional to the cubes of the diameters of their bases and inversely proportional to their lengths.

*(Galileo Galilei. Dialogues Concerning Two New Sciences. Translated by Henry Crew and Alfonso de Salvio. New York: Dover Publications, 1954)*

Galileo is describing the physical characteristics of real objects with algebraic functions. Unfortunately he lacks a convenient algebraic notation to express these ideas.

In his use of algebra, Galileo was not alone. During the Renaissance scientists discovered that algebra was often the most convenient way that they had to express their ideas. The synthesis that occurred between algebra and science during the Renaissance accelerated interest in algebra. It probably also accelerated progress in science

*(continues)*

## ALGEBRA AS A TOOL IN SCIENCE

(continued)

because it made new abstract relations between different properties more transparent and easier to manipulate. Algebra as a *symbolic language* was gaining prominence in mathematics. As notation improved and insight deepened into how algebra could be used, algebraic notation became the standard way that mathematicians expressed their ideas in many branches of mathematics. Today algebra has so thoroughly permeated the language of mathematics and the physical sciences that it is doubtful that the subject matter of these important disciplines could be expressed independently of the algebraic notation in which they are written.

actual utility had been limited because mathematicians knew only enough algebra to solve relatively simple problems. The problems that were solved by the Mesopotamian, Chinese, Indian, and Islamic mathematicians were by and large simple variations on a very small group of very similar problems. This changed with the publication of *Ars Magna*.

Finally, Cardano's book made it seem at least possible that similar formulas might exist for algebraic equations of fifth degree and higher. This possibility inspired many mathematicians to begin searching for algorithms that would enable them to find exact solutions for equations of degree higher than 4.

### François Viète, Algebra as a Symbolic Language

Inspired by the very public success of Tartaglia and Ferrari and the book of Cardano, the study of algebra spread throughout much of Europe. One of the first and most obvious barriers to further progress was the lack of a convenient symbolism for expressing the new ideas, but this condition was changing, albeit in a haphazard way. Throughout Europe various algebraic symbols were introduced. Mathematicians in different geographical or linguistic regions employed different notation. There were several symbols pro-



*Ancient Poitiers, France. Viète studied law at the University of Poitiers, but he soon turned his attention to mathematical research. (Middlebury College, Language Schools, Graduate Program)*

posed for what we now know as an equals sign ( $=$ ). There were also alternatives for  $+$ ,  $-$ ,  $\times$ , and so on. It took time for the notation to become standardized, but all of these notational innovations were important in the sense that they made algebra easier. Rhetorical algebra can be slow to read and unnecessarily difficult to follow. Ordinary everyday language, the kind of language that we use in conversation, is not the right language in which to express algebra, and the higher the level of abstraction becomes, the more difficult the rhetorical expression of algebra is to read. Nor was the lack of a suitable notation the only barrier to progress.

Algebra is about more than symbols. Algebra is about ideas, and despite the creativity of del Ferro, Tartaglia, Ferrari, and others, the algebra of much of the 16th century was similar in concept to what Islamic mathematicians had developed centuries earlier. For most mathematicians of the time, algebra was still about finding roots of equations. It was a very concrete subject. The equation was like a question; the numbers that satisfied the equation were

the answers. A successful mathematician could solve several different types of equations; an unsuccessful mathematician could not. At the time algebra was a collection of problem-solving techniques. It was the search for formulas. The formulas might well be complicated, of course, but the goal was not. One of the first mathematicians to understand that algebra is about more than developing techniques to solve equations was the French mathematician François Viète (1540–1603).

Viète was born into a comfortable family in Fontenay-le-Comte, a small town located in the west of France not far from the Bay of Biscay. He studied law at the University of Poitiers. Perhaps his initial interest in law was due to his father, who was also a lawyer, but the legal profession was not for Viète. Within a few years of graduation he had given up on law and was working as a tutor for a wealthy family. His work as a tutor was a quiet beginning to an eventful life. As with many French citizens, Viète's life was profoundly influenced by the political instability that long plagued France. For Viète, the cause of the turmoil was religious tension between the Roman Catholic majority and the Protestant minority, called Huguenots. Viète's sympathies lay with the Huguenots.

While he was working as a tutor, Viète began his research into mathematics. He left his job as a tutor in 1573, when he was appointed to a government position. Fortunately for mathematics, in 1584 he was banished from government for his Huguenot sympathies. Viète moved to a small town and for five years devoted himself to the study of mathematics. It was, mathematically speaking, the most productive time of his life.

Viète understood that the unknowns in an algebraic equation could represent *types* of objects. His was a much broader view of an equation than simply as an opportunity to find “the answer.” If the unknown could represent a type or “species” of object, then algebra was about relationships between types. Viète's higher level of abstract thought led to an important notational breakthrough. It is to Viète that we owe the idea of representing the unknown in an equation with a letter. In fact, in his search for more general patterns Viète also used letters to represent known quantities. (The “known quantities” are what we have been calling coefficients.)



Although we have been using this notation since the beginning of this volume—it is hard to talk about algebra without it—historically speaking, this method of notation did not begin until Viète invented it.

Viète's method was to use vowels to represent unknown quantities and consonants to represent known quantities. (This is not quite what we use today; today we let letters toward the end of the alphabet represent unknowns and letters toward the beginning of the alphabet represent known quantities). Notice that by employing letters for the coefficients Viète deprives himself of any hope of finding numerical solutions. The compensation for this loss of specificity is that the letters made it easier for Viète to see broader patterns. The letters helped him identify relationships between the various symbols and the classes of objects that they represented.

Though some of Viète's ideas were important and innovative, others were old-fashioned or just plain awkward. Viète was old-fashioned in that he still had a fairly restricted idea of what constituted an acceptable solution. As had his predecessors, Viète accepted only positive numbers as legitimate solutions.

Viète had an unusual and, in retrospect, awkward idea for how unknowns and coefficients should be combined. He interpreted his unknowns as if there were units attached to them. We have already encountered a similar sort of interpretation. Recall that Omar Khayyám had conceptual difficulties in dealing with fourth-degree equations *because* he interpreted an unknown as a length. For Omar an unknown length squared represented a (geometric) square, an unknown length cubed was a (three-dimensional) cube, and as a consequence there was no immediate way of interpreting an unknown raised to the fourth power. In a similar vein, Viète required all terms in an equation to be “homogeneous” in the sense that they all had to have the same units. The equation that we would write as  $x^2 + x = 1$ , an equation without dimensions, would have made little sense to Viète since it involved adding, for example, a line segment,  $x$ , to a square,  $x^2$ . Instead Viète insisted on assigning dimensions to his coefficients so that all terms had the same dimensions. For example, he preferred to work with



equations like  $A^3 - 3B^2A = B^2D$ . This was very important to him, although in retrospect it is hard to see why. Succeeding generations of mathematicians perceived his requirement of homogeneity as a hindrance and abandoned it.

Viète's work was a remarkable mixture of the old and the new, and with these conceptual tools he began to develop a theory of equations. Although he knew how to solve all algebraic equations up to and including those of the fourth degree, he went further than simply identifying the roots. He was, for example, able to identify certain cases in which the coefficients that appeared in the equations were functions of the equation's solutions. This is, in a sense, the reverse of the problem considered by Tartaglia and Ferrari, who found formulas that gave the solutions as functions of the coefficients. This observation allowed Viète to begin making new connections between the coefficients that appeared in the equation and the roots of the equation.

Viète also began to notice relationships between the degree of the equation and the number of roots of the equation. He demonstrated that at least in certain cases, the number of roots was the same as the degree of the equation. (He was prevented from drawing more general conclusions by his narrow conception of what a number, and hence a solution, is.)

All of these observations are important because there are many connections between the solutions of an algebraic equation and the form of the equation. It turns out that if one knows the coefficients and the degree of the equation then one also knows a great deal about the roots, and vice versa. Then as now, the exact solutions (roots) of an equation were sometimes less important to mathematicians than other, more abstract properties of the equation itself. Viète may well have been the first mathematician to think along these lines.

Viète eventually returned to government service, but he did not abandon his mathematical studies. He was a successful cryptographer during a war between France and Spain—so successful that the Spanish king complained to the pope that the French were using sorcery to break the Spanish codes. Viète also wrote books about astronomy and trigonometry, and he wrote about the three

classical, unsolved problems of ancient Greece: trisection of an angle, squaring of a circle, and doubling of a cube. (During Viète's life, these problems had become fashionable again, and claims were made that all three of the problems had been solved. Viète rightly showed that all of the new proofs were faulty and that the problems remained unsolved.) Viète, a lawyer by training, was one of the most forward-thinking mathematicians of his time. His insights into algebra permanently and profoundly changed the subject.

### **Thomas Harriot**

Very little is known of Thomas Harriot (1560–1621) before he enrolled in Oxford University. After he graduated, however, he became a public figure because of his association with Sir Walter Raleigh (ca. 1554–1618). Today, Raleigh is best remembered as an adventurer and writer. He sailed the Atlantic Ocean, freely confusing the national good with his own personal profit, and he attempted to establish a colony on Roanoke Island in present-day North Carolina. He sailed to present-day Guyana in search of gold to loot. He wrote about his adventures, and the stories of his exploits made him a popular figure with the general public and with Queen Elizabeth I, who became his patron and protector.

Walter Raleigh was also a serious student of mathematics. He was not, apparently, an insightful mathematician, but he knew enough to hire Thomas Harriot, who was probably the best mathematician in England at the time. Raleigh was interested in the mathematical problems associated with navigation, and Harriot, who was active in a number of scientific and technical areas, spent a good deal of his time researching how best to use observations of the Sun and stars to determine one's latitude as accurately as possible.

In addition to his work for Raleigh, Harriot was a creative scientist with an intense interest in the progress of science and mathematics. In some ways, Harriot was a more modern mathematician than Viète. His algebraic notation was simpler than Viète's and his concept of number broader than that of his French contemporary.

In particular, Harriot accepted positive, negative, and imaginary roots as solutions to algebraic equations, although he had only a vague idea of what an imaginary number is. His broader concept of solution enabled him to make an interesting and very important observation about polynomials and their roots.

Since antiquity, mathematicians interested in algebra had sought to solve the following problem: Given a polynomial, find the roots. Harriot introduced what might be called an inverse to the ancient problem: Given a collection of numbers, find a polynomial with those numbers as roots.

To see how this works, suppose that we are given the numbers  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ . Harriot discovered that he could write a third degree polynomial with these numbers as roots. Here, in modern notation, is his solution:  $(x - a)(x - b)(x - c)$ . Multiplied out, this expression can be written as  $x^3 - (a + b + c)x^2 + (ab + bc + ac)x - abc$ . Harriot's was an important observation for two reasons.

First, recall that the product of several numbers can equal zero only if at least one of the numbers is zero. Consequently, the polynomial  $(x - a)(x - b)(x - c)$  equals zero only when  $x$  equals  $a$ , or  $b$ , or  $c$ . Second, the expression  $x^3 - (a + b + c)x^2 + (ab + bc + ac)x - abc$  shows how each coefficient can be written using only the roots of the polynomial. Once Harriot's observations about the inverse problem were generalized they would prove very useful to future generations of mathematicians.

Harriot might have exercised as much influence over the development of algebra as Viète if he had taken time to publish his results, but he did not. His early years were spent working for Raleigh, and his later years were in continual turmoil because of his former association with Raleigh. King James I, who succeeded Elizabeth I upon her death, disapproved of Raleigh's adventurism. Soon Raleigh was accused of conspiring to overthrow James and imprisoned. Harriot, tarnished by his association with Raleigh, spent a brief time in jail and encountered difficulty in finding further support for his work. For 40 years, Harriot had made important discoveries in mathematics and science, but he had published nothing, and so his discoveries were not widely known. Shortly before he died of cancer he asked a friend to sort through his work

and arrange it for publication. Eventually a single book entitled *Artis analyticae praxis* was published describing some of Harriot's work. It is through this one slim volume that we know of Harriot's accomplishments in algebra.

### Albert Girard

Near the end of Harriot's life, the Flemish mathematician and engineer Albert Girard (1590–1633) was active in mathematics. Girard was educated at the University of Leiden, in Holland, and for a time he worked with the Flemish scientist, mathematician, and engineer Simon Stevin. During his own time, Girard was known as a military architect, designing fortifications and the like, but today he is better remembered for an interesting observation—but not a proof—about the nature of algebraic equations. Girard correctly hypothesized that every polynomial of degree  $n$  has  $n$  roots.

To appreciate what was new about Girard's hypothesis, recall that al-Khwārizmī and Viète only accepted positive roots as valid roots. Consequently, for them it was false that every polynomial of degree  $n$  has  $n$  roots. In order for Girard's conjecture to be true, one must be willing to accept negative numbers and even complex numbers as roots. This was part of the problem: Even if one accepted that Girard's conjecture was correct, its meaning was not entirely clear because no one had a very detailed understanding of the number system.

Another way of understanding Girard's guess is by analogy with the set of natural numbers. Each natural number belongs to exactly one of the following three sets: the set of all prime numbers, the set of all composite numbers, or the set consisting of the number 1. (The number 1 constitutes its own class; it is neither prime nor composite.) A prime number is only divisible by itself and 1. The first five prime numbers, for example, are 2, 3, 5, 7, and 11. Any natural number larger than 1 that is not prime is called a composite number. Every composite number can always be written as a product of prime numbers. The number 462, for example, is composite, and it can be written as the product of four primes:  $462 = 2 \times 3 \times 7 \times 11$ . Consequently, prime numbers are

$$x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_{n-2}x^{n-2} + \dots + a_1x + a_0 = (x-r_1)(x-r_2)(x-r_3)\dots(x-r_n)$$

© Infobase Learning

*Girard hypothesized that every polynomial of degree  $n$  has  $n$  roots. This is equivalent to the hypothesis that every polynomial of degree  $n$  can be written as a product of  $n$  linear factors.*

like building blocks. From the set of prime numbers, every natural number greater than 1 can be “constructed.” Or to put it another way: Any natural number greater than 1 can be written as a product of primes.

Essentially, Girard speculated that linear factors—that is, expressions of the form  $(x - a)$ —have the same function in the set of all polynomials that prime numbers have in the set of all natural numbers. To appreciate Girard’s conjecture in more modern notation, suppose that we are given a polynomial of the form  $x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_{n-2}x^{n-2} + \dots + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0$ . (Recall that the  $a_j$ s are real numbers, and the  $x^j$ s represent the variable  $x$  raised to the power  $j$ , where  $j$  is always a natural number.) Girard asserted that there exist  $n$  linear factors  $(x - r_1)(x - r_2), \dots (x - r_n)$  such that when they are multiplied together one obtains the given polynomial. The resulting equation, which is a generalization of Harriot’s observation, looks like this:

$$\begin{aligned} x^n + a_{n-1}x^{n-1} + a_{n-2}x^{n-2} + \dots + a_2x^2 + a_1x + a_0 \\ = (x - r_1)(x - r_2)(x - r_3) \dots (x - r_{n-1})(x - r_n) \end{aligned}$$

At the time, this was a very hard statement to prove. Given an arbitrary polynomial, no one knew how to prove that the necessary linear factors existed, and no one knew the nature of the roots that appear on the right side of the equation. Today, it is relatively easy to show that the linear factors exist; we have a much keener appreciation of the difficulties involved in finding the linear factors, and we have a much clearer understanding of the nature of the roots that appear in the factors.

To better appreciate how an incomplete understanding of the number system proved to be a barrier to progress in the study of algebraic equations, recall that complex numbers are defined as numbers of the form  $a + bi$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers, and the letter  $i$  represents a number with the property that  $i^2 = -1$ . But this modern definition of a complex number, a definition that most students now encounter in their high school math class, was of little help to mathematicians of Girard's time. They examined equations such as  $x^4 + 1 = 0$ , and they could see that  $\sqrt[4]{i}$  was a root of this polynomial, but could  $\sqrt[4]{i}$  be written in the form  $a + bi$ ? Is  $\sqrt[4]{i}$  a complex number? Today, we know the answer is yes, but in Girard's time no one knew the answer. No one knew how to expand the number system until it contained all solutions to all algebraic equations.

With the work of del Ferro, Tartaglia, and Ferrari on the one hand, and Viète, Harriot, and Girard on the other, mathematicians were faced with two very different paths for research. Mathematicians could search (and some did search!) for algorithms that would enable them to write the roots of polynomials of degree higher than four using only the coefficients that appear in the polynomials. This type of research was an extension of the discoveries of del Ferro, Tartaglia, and Ferrari. After two centuries of additional effort, the efforts of these mathematicians culminated in the surprising discovery that such algorithms do not exist. Alternatively, mathematicians could develop the necessary concepts to prove Girard's conjecture that every polynomial of degree  $n$  can be written as a product of linear factors. Some of the best mathematical minds of the next two centuries would work on this problem. It was solved almost as soon as a modern representation of the complex number system was developed.

## The Fundamental Theorem of Algebra

Approximately two centuries separated Girard's inspired guess that every polynomial can be written as a product of linear factors and the first proof that he had guessed correctly. Many prolific and successful mathematicians tried their hand at producing a

proof, and a modest amount of progress was made. Typical of the times were the efforts of the Swiss mathematician and scientist Leonhard Euler (1707–93), who proved that every polynomial of degree less than or equal to six could be written as a product of linear factors. Euler believed that the result was generally true—that is, that every polynomial could be written as a product of linear factors—but he was unable to prove it.

By the end of the 18th century, few mathematicians had any doubt that every polynomial could be written as a product of linear factors, but they were unable to show it. But mathematics is a deductive science. No result can be accepted as true unless it is proved true. The statement that every polynomial can be written as a product of linear factors cannot be accepted simply because it is true for every polynomial that has been examined. There are infinitely many polynomials. Most are of a degree so high that it is impossible to write the largest exponent appearing in the polynomial. It is just too large. Consequently, the situation cannot be resolved by examining individual cases. The statement must be shown to be a logical consequence of the axioms that form the basis of the subject. This was accomplished early in the 19th century—most famously by the German mathematician and scientist Carl Friedrich Gauss (1777–1855).

Gauss showed mathematical promise at a young age and was awarded a stipend by the duke of Brunswick. The stipend made it possible for Gauss to go through high school and university and to earn a Ph.D. His proof of what is now called the fundamental theorem of algebra was part of his Ph.D. thesis. It was his first proof, and there were some gaps in it, but it was a great step forward.

Gauss's proof of this important result did not lead him to a job immediately after graduation. However, he did not want a job. He preferred to study, and he was able to act independently because the stipend that he received from the duke continued for several years after he was awarded the Ph.D. During this time he devoted himself to his own mathematical research. He obtained a job as director of the astronomical observatory at Göttingen University only after the duke died and his stipend was discontinued. Gauss

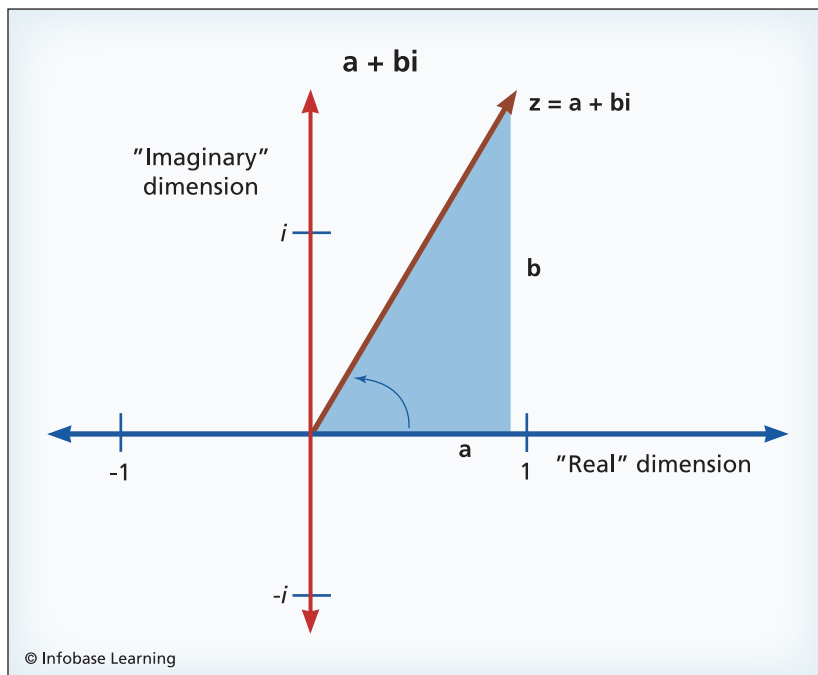
remained in his position as director of the observatory for his entire working life.

Despite the many discoveries Gauss made throughout his life, the fundamental theorem of algebra was an especially important idea for him. As we mentioned, his first attempt at proving the fundamental theorem of algebra, the attempt that earned him a Ph.D., had several gaps in it. He later revised the proof to correct its initial deficiencies. In fact Gauss never stopped tinkering with the fundamental theorem of algebra. He later published a third proof, and when he wanted to celebrate the 50th anniversary of receiving his Ph.D., he published a fourth proof. Each proof approached the problem from a slightly different perspective. He died not long after publishing his fourth proof, his mathematical career bracketed by the fundamental theorem of algebra.

Gauss's eventual success in developing a completely rigorous proof of the fundamental theorem was due, in part, to his firm grasp of the nature of complex numbers. It is no coincidence that he was also one of the first mathematicians to develop a clear, geometrical interpretation of the complex number system. Gauss represented the complex number system as points on a plane. Each complex number  $a + bi$  is interpreted as a point  $(a, b)$  in the so-called complex plane (see the accompanying figure, on page 80). This geometric representation of the complex number system is the one that is in common use today. Gauss was not the only person to have this particular insight. Though the idea seems simple enough, it was a very important innovation. This is demonstrated by the fact that after centuries of work, two of the earliest individuals to discover this clear and unambiguous interpretation of the complex number system also discovered proofs of the fundamental theorem of algebra.

Another early proof of the fundamental theorem of algebra was given by Jean Robert Argand (1768–1822). Argand was Swiss-born. He was a quiet, unassuming man. Little is known of his early background or even of his education. We do know that he lived in Paris and worked as a bookkeeper and accountant, that he was married and had children, and that as much as he enjoyed the study of mathematics, it was for him just a hobby.





*Every complex number can be represented as a point on the complex plane.*

Argand was not especially aggressive in making himself known to other mathematicians. In 1806 he published a thin mathematics book at his own expense. In it one finds two of the most important ideas of the time: a geometrical representation of the complex numbers and a proof of the fundamental theorem of algebra. Because the book was published anonymously, years later, when the work had finally attracted the attention of some of the best mathematicians of the day, a call went out for the unknown author to identify himself and claim credit for the ideas contained in the work. It was only then that Argand stepped forward to identify himself as the author. He later published a small number of additional papers that commented on the work of other authors or elaborated on the ideas contained in his original, anonymously published book.

Argand's geometric representation of the complex numbers is today known as the Argand diagram. It is the interpretation of the complex numbers that students learn first when introduced

## THE IMPORTANCE OF POLYNOMIALS

For much of the history of the human race, mathematicians have worked to understand the mathematical structure of polynomials. They have developed algorithms to find the roots of polynomials, they have developed algorithms that allow them to approximate the roots of polynomials, and they have studied the mathematical relationships that exist between algebraic (polynomial) equations and their roots. The study of polynomials has motivated the development of many important mathematical ideas.

Polynomials also play an important role in scientific and engineering computations. In many of the mathematical equations that arise in these disciplines, the unknown is not a number but a function. That function may represent the path of a rocket through space or, in meteorology, the position of a high-pressure front as it moves across Earth's surface. Equations that have functions, instead of numbers, for solutions are often exceedingly difficult to solve. In fact, as a general rule, the precise solutions are often impossible to calculate. The strategy that applied scientists adopt, therefore, is to construct a function that approximates the exact solution. A polynomial, or a set of polynomials, is often the ideal choice for an approximating solution. There are two main reasons polynomials are so widely used.

First, polynomials are well-understood mathematical functions. In addition to the fundamental theorem of algebra there are a host of other theorems that describe their mathematical properties. These theorems enable scientists and engineers to calculate with polynomials with relative ease.

Second, there are many polynomials to choose from. This means that in many problems of practical importance there are sufficiently many polynomials to enable the scientist or engineer to calculate a very accurate approximation to the solution by using only polynomials. This method is often used despite the fact that the exact solution to the equation in which they have an interest is not a polynomial at all.

These two facts have been known to mathematicians since the 19th century, but the computational difficulties involved in calculating the desired polynomials often made applying these ideas too difficult. With the advent of computers, however, many of the computational difficulties disappeared, so that from a practical point of view polynomials are now more important than ever.

to the subject. His proof that every algebraic equation of degree  $n$  with complex coefficients has  $n$  roots would also seem familiar to students interested in more advanced algebra. His approach

to proving the fundamental theorem is similar to a common modern proof.

The fundamental theorem of algebra is the culmination of a theory of equations that began with the work of ancient Mesopotamian scribes pressing triangular shapes into slabs of wet clay on the hot plains of Mesopotamia thousands of years ago. It illuminates basic connections between polynomials and the complex number system. It does not solve every problem associated with polynomials, of course. There were still questions, for example, about the computational techniques needed to approximate the roots of polynomials and about the role of polynomials in broader classes of functions. Furthermore special classes of polynomials would eventually be identified for their utility in solving practical computational problems in science and engineering. (This research would be further accelerated by the invention of computers.) And, finally, the fundamental theorem itself sheds no light on why the methods that had proved so useful for finding the roots of algebraic equations of degree less than 5 would, in general, prove ineffective for finding the roots of equations of degree 5 or more. Nevertheless the fundamental theorem shows how several properties of polynomials that had been of interest to mathematicians for the last 4,000 years are related.

- It relates the degree of an equation to the number of its solutions.
- It demonstrates that, in theory, any polynomial can be factored.
- It shows that the complex number system contains all solutions to the set of all algebraic equations.

Research into algebra did not end with the fundamental theorem of algebra, of course; it shifted focus from the study of the solutions of polynomials toward a more general study of the logical structure of mathematical systems.

# 5

## ALGEBRA IN GEOMETRY AND ANALYSIS

In the 17th century mathematicians began to express geometric relationships algebraically. Algebraic descriptions are in many ways preferable to the geometric descriptions favored by the ancient Greeks. They are often more concise and usually easier to manipulate. But to obtain these descriptions, mathematicians needed a way of connecting the geometric ideas of lines, curves, and surfaces with algebraic symbols. The discovery of a method for effecting this connection—now called analytic geometry—had a profound impact on the history of mathematics and on the history of science in general.

In order to appreciate the importance of applying algebraic methods to the study of geometry, it helps to know a little about how the ancient Greeks studied curves. The Greek mathematician Apollonius of Perga (ca. 262 B.C.E.–ca. 190 B.C.E.), for example, was one of the most successful of all Greek mathematicians, and his major work, called *Conics*, was entirely devoted to the study of four curves: the ellipse, the circle, which is closely related to the ellipse, the parabola, and the hyperbola. These are the so-called conic sections.

Apollonius described each of the conic sections as the intersection of a plane with a double cone. (A double cone looks like two ice cream–like cones joined together at their respective vertices. Here is how Apollonius described a double cone: Begin with a circle and a point directly above the center of the circle. Call the point  $P$ . Next imagine a line passing through  $P$  and some point on the circle. Now pivot the line through the point  $P$  in such a way

## 84 ALGEBRA

that it remains in contact with the circle. The line will trace out a double cone in space. The exact shape of the cone will depend on the distance between the point  $P$  and the center of the circle.) If the plane cuts all of the way across a single cone, then the result is a circle or an ellipse. A circle is produced when the cone's line of symmetry makes a right angle with the plane; change the angle slightly and the result is an ellipse. If the plane cuts across the cone in such a way that it is parallel with a line that passes through  $P$  and remains in contact with the cone, then the result is a parabola. Finally, if the plane cuts both the upper and lower cones, the result is a hyperbola.

The preceding description of the conic sections is very wordy because it uses no algebra. Instead, it describes these curves in the same way that Apollonius understood them, which, when compared with modern methods, is a very awkward way indeed. But Apollonius's geometric construction was typical of the way that the Greeks described all the curves that they studied—a method of description so awkward that although the Greek mathematical tradition spanned six centuries, they studied only about one dozen curves. Their dependence on diagrams and complicated sentences proved a barrier to progress, and that barrier remained in place for more than 1,000 years.

Coordinate systems were what enabled mathematicians



*A philosopher and scientist as well as a mathematician, Descartes revealed connections between algebra and geometry that contributed to progress in both fields in his Discours de la Methode. Its publication marks the beginning of a new era in mathematics.*

to surmount what the 17th-century mathematician René Descartes called “the tyranny of the diagram.” By establishing a correspondence between points on a plane and ordered pairs of numbers, mathematicians were able to express planar curves (geometry) as relations between variables (algebra). Most of us become so familiar with coordinate systems at such an early age that we fail to appreciate their importance. But coordinate systems enabled mathematicians to interpret algebraic statements in the language of geometry and sometimes solve algebraic problems using geometric methods. Coordinate systems also enabled mathematicians to express geometric problems in the language of algebra, and when they did so they discovered that difficult geometry problems sometimes had simple algebraic solutions. Progress in one branch of mathematics led to progress in the other. The result of this effort was what we now call analytic geometry. The foundational concepts of analytic geometry were proposed almost simultaneously by two 17th-century mathematicians, René Descartes and Pierre de Fermat.

### René Descartes

The French mathematician, scientist, and philosopher René Descartes (1596–1650) was one of the more colorful characters in the history of mathematics. Although we will concentrate on his ideas about mathematics, his contributions to several branches of science are just as important as his mathematical innovations, and today he is perhaps best remembered as a philosopher.

Descartes’s mother died when he was an infant. His father, a lawyer, ensured that Descartes received an excellent education. As a youth Descartes displayed a quick intellect, and he was described by those who knew him at the time as a boy with an endless series of questions. He attended the Royal College at La Flèche and the University of Poitiers, but the more education he received, the less pleasure he seemed to derive from it. Given his academic record this is a little surprising. He was a talented writer who demonstrated a real gift for learning languages. He also displayed an early interest in science and math. The Royal College, where

he received his early education, accommodated his idiosyncrasies: The rector at the school allowed Descartes to spend his mornings in bed. Descartes enjoyed lying in bed thinking, and he apparently maintained this habit for most of his life. Nevertheless by the time he graduated from college he was confused and disappointed. He felt that he had learned little of which he could be sure. It was a deficiency that he spent a lifetime correcting.

After college Descartes wandered across Europe for a number of years. On occasion he enlisted in an army. This was not an uncommon way for a young gentleman to pass the time. He claimed that as a young man he enjoyed war, though there are conflicting opinions about how much time he spent fighting and how much time he spent “lying in” each morning. (Ideas about military discipline have changed in the intervening centuries.) In addition to his military adventures, Descartes took the time to meet intellectuals and to exchange ideas. This went on for about a decade. Eventually, however, he settled in Holland, where he remained for almost two decades, writing and thinking.

Holland was a good place for Descartes. His ideas were new and radical, and like most radical ideas, good and bad, Descartes’s ideas were not especially popular. In a less tolerant country, he would have been in great danger, but because he was under the protection of the Dutch leader, the prince of Orange, he was safe from physical harm. Though he was not physically attacked for his ideas, there was a period when his books were banned.

During his stay in Holland Descartes applied himself to exploring and describing his ideas in mathematics, science, and philosophy. In mathematics his major discoveries can be found in the book *Discours de la méthode* (Discourse on method), especially in an appendix to this work that describes his ideas on geometry. It is in the *Discours* that Descartes makes the necessary connections between geometry and algebra that resulted in a new branch of mathematics. It is also in this book that he developed most of the algebraic symbolism that we use today. With very few exceptions, Descartes’s algebra resembles our algebra. (The reason is that our algebra is modeled on Descartes’s.) Most modern readers can understand Descartes’s own equations without difficulty.

One of Descartes's simpler and yet very important contributions was to reinterpret ideas that were already known. Since the days of the ancient Greeks, an unknown was associated with a line segment. If we call the unknown  $x$ , the product of  $x$  with itself was interpreted as a square. This is why we call the symbol  $x^2$  “ $x$  squared.” This geometric interpretation had been a great conceptual aid to the Greeks, but over the intervening centuries it had become a barrier to progress. The difficulty was not with  $x^2$  or even  $x \times x \times x$ , written  $x^3$  and called “ $x$  cubed.” The symbol  $x^3$  was interpreted as a three-dimensional cube. The problem with this geometric interpretation was that it required one to imagine a four-dimensional “cube” for the product of  $x$  with itself four times, a five-dimensional cube for the product of  $x$  with itself five times, and so forth. This impeded understanding. The great mathematician Omar Khayyám, for example, was unable to assign a meaning to a polynomial of degree 4, because he was not able to see past this type of geometric interpretation of the symbol  $x^4$ .

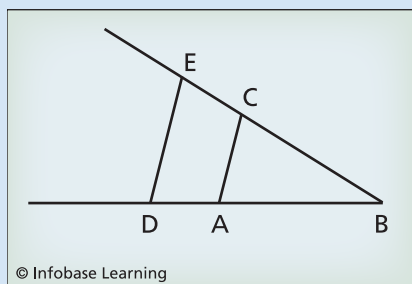
Descartes still imagined the variable  $x$  as representing a line segment of indeterminate length. His innovation was the way he imagined higher powers of  $x$  and, more generally, the geometric interpretation he gave products. Descartes, for example, simply imagined  $x$ ,  $x^2$ ,  $x^3$ ,  $x^4$ , and so forth, as representing lengths of line segments, and products of two different variables,  $x$  and  $y$ , as representing the length of a third line segment of length  $xy$  instead of a rectangle of area  $xy$  as the Greeks and their successors had imagined. To make the idea palatable, he described it geometrically (see the sidebar Descartes on Multiplication).

Today, Descartes's name is used to describe a particular type of coordinate system, the Cartesian coordinate system. As with all coordinate systems—and over the intervening centuries scientists, engineers, and mathematicians have created many different coordinate systems—the Cartesian system is a method for establishing a correspondence between points and numbers. A two-dimensional Cartesian system is formed by identifying a special point, which is called the origin, and a line passing through the origin, which we will call the  $x$ -axis. A second point on the  $x$ -axis



is used to establish a direction and a distance. The distance from the origin to this second point is taken as one unit, and the direction one travels from the origin to the second point identifies the direction of increasing  $x$ . The line that passes through the origin and is perpendicular to the  $x$ -axis is the  $y$ -axis. By convention, the positive direction on the  $y$ -axis is determined by that of the  $x$ -axis: Rotate the  $x$ -axis 90 degrees about the origin in a counterclockwise direction, and the rotated  $x$ -axis will be pointing in the direction of increasing  $y$ . Often distances along the  $y$ -axis are measured according to the same scale as distances along the  $x$ -axis, but this is not necessary, and sometimes it is advantageous to use a different scaling along the  $y$ -axis. Once the origin, the axes, and

### DESCARTES ON MULTIPLICATION



*Descartes's geometric interpretation of the operation of multiplication*

In more modern terminology, the Greeks established a correspondence between the length of line segments and what we would call real numbers. A number of magnitude  $x$  would be represented by a segment of length  $x$ . The product of two numbers  $x$  and  $y$  was represented as a rectangle with the segment of length  $x$  forming one side of the rectangle and the seg-

ment of length  $y$  forming the other. This works well until one wants to consider products of numbers  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $x$ , and  $y$ . Most of us have a difficult time picturing a way of orienting line segments of length  $u$ ,  $v$ ,  $x$ , and  $y$  so as to form a four-dimensional rectangular solid.

Descartes's innovation was to use triangles rather than rectangles and imagine all products as simply line segments of the appropriate length. We use the accompanying diagram to paraphrase Descartes's ideas on multiplication. Suppose

- the distance from  $A$  to  $B$  is one unit long

the scaling have been determined, a unique pair of numbers—the  $x$  and  $y$  coordinates—can be placed in correspondence with each point on the plane, and every point on the plane can be placed in correspondence with a unique pair of numbers. Questions about points can now be rephrased as questions about ordered pairs of numbers and vice versa. Conceptually similar Cartesian coordinate systems can be used to describe three-dimensional space, which requires an ordered triplet of numbers, four-dimensional space, which requires an ordered “four-tuple” of numbers, and so forth. Cartesian coordinate systems are often described as one of Descartes’s important contributions, but the situation is more complicated.

- the distance from  $A$  to  $C$  is  $x$  units long and
- the distance from  $B$  to  $D$  is  $y$  units long

and construct a segment passing through  $D$  that is parallel to the line  $AC$ . Segment  $DE$  is this parallel line segment. The triangles  $ABC$  and  $DBE$  are similar, so the ratios of their corresponding sides are equal. In symbols this is written as

$$AC/1 = DE/BD$$

or using  $x$  and  $y$  in place of  $AC$  and  $BD$ , respectively,

$$x/1 = DE/y$$

or, finally, solving for  $DE$ , we get

$$xy = DE$$

With this diagram Descartes provided a new and more productive geometric interpretation of arithmetic.

Descartes’s innovation freed mathematicians from the limiting ideas of Greek and Islamic mathematicians about the meaning of multiplication and other arithmetic operations. He also showed that the requirement of homogeneity that had made using Viète’s algebra so awkward was unnecessary.

Descartes's understanding of analytic geometry was profoundly different from ours. We acknowledge his contribution by calling the most common of all coordinate systems in use today the Cartesian coordinate system, but Descartes made little use of Cartesian coordinates. To be sure, he recognized the value of coordinates as a tool in bridging the subjects of algebra and geometry, but he generally used oblique coordinates. (In an oblique coordinate system, the coordinate axes do not meet at right angles.) Furthermore because he questioned the reality of negative numbers, he refrained from using negative coordinates. As a consequence Descartes restricted himself to what we would call the first quadrant, that part of the coordinate plane where both coordinates are positive. He did, however, recognize and exploit the connection between equations and geometric curves, and this was extremely important.

In Descartes's time conic sections—ellipses, parabolas, and hyperbolas—were still generally described as Apollonius had described them. Descartes explored the connections between the geometric descriptions of conic sections and algebraic equations. He did this by examining the connections between geometry and the *algebraic* equation  $y^2 = ay - bxy + cx - dx^2 + e$ . (In this equation  $x$  and  $y$  are the variables and  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $c$ ,  $d$ , and  $e$  are the coefficients.) Depending on how one chooses the coefficients one can obtain an algebraic description of any of the conic sections. For example, if  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  are chosen to be 0 and  $d$  and  $e$  are positive, then the equation describes an ellipse. If, on the other hand,  $a$ ,  $b$ ,  $d$ , and  $e$  are taken as 0 and  $c$  is not 0 then the graph is a parabola. Descartes went much further in exploring the connections between algebra and geometry than any of his predecessors, and in doing so he demonstrated how mathematically powerful these ideas are.

What, in retrospect, may have been Descartes's most important discoveries received much less attention from their discoverer than they deserved. Descartes recognized that when one equation contains two unknowns, which we call  $x$  and  $y$ , there is generally more than one solution to the equation. In other words, given a value for  $x$ , we can, under fairly general conditions, find a value for  $y$  such that together the two numbers satisfy the one equation. The set of all such solutions as  $x$  varies over some interval forms a curve. These observations can be made mathematically precise, and the

448

ŒUVRES DE DESCARTES.

375.

Que si on veut, au contraire, diminuer de trois la racine de cete mesme Equation, il faut faire

$$y + 3 \approx x \quad \& \quad yy + 6y + 9 \approx xx,$$

& ainsi des autres. De façon qu'au lieu de

$$x^4 + 4x^3 - 19xx - 106x - 120 \approx 0, \quad 5$$

on met

$$\begin{array}{r} y^4 + 12y^3 + 54yy + 108y + 81 \\ + 4y^3 + 36yy + 108y + 108 \\ - 19yy - 114y - 171 \\ - 106y - 318 \\ - 120 \\ \hline y^4 + 16y^3 + 71yy - 4y - 420 \approx 0. \end{array} \quad 10$$

Qu'en augmentant  
les vrayes racines,  
on diminue les  
fausses, & au  
contraire.

Et il est a remarquer qu'en diminuant les vrayes racines d'une Equation, on diminue les fausses de la mesme quantité, ou, au contraire, en diminuant les vrayes, on augmente les fausses; & que, si on diminue, soit les vnes, soit les autres, d'une quantité qui leur soit esgale, elles deuiennent nulles, & que, si c'est d'une quantité qui les surpasse, de vrayes elles deuiennent fausses, ou de fausses, vrayes. Comme icy, en augmentant de 3 la vraye racine, qui estoit 5, on a diminué de 3 chascune des fausses, en sorte que celle qui estoit 4 n'est plus qu'1, & celle qui estoit 3 est nulle, & que celle qui estoit 2 est deuenue vraye & est 1, a cause que  $-2 + 3$  fait  $+1$ . C'est pourquoy, en cete Equation, 15

$$y^3 - 8yy - 1y + 8 \approx 0,$$

il n'y a plus que 3 racines, entre lesquelles il y en a 25

*A page from Descartes's Discours showing how similar Descartes's algebraic notation is to modern notation* (Courtesy of University of Vermont)

precise expression of these ideas is often called the fundamental principle of analytic geometry. Descartes knew the fundamental principle of analytic geometry, but he seems to have considered it less important than some of the other ideas contained in his work.

The fundamental principle of analytic geometry is important because it freed mathematicians from the paucity of curves that had been familiar to the ancient Greeks. Descartes had discovered

a method for generating infinitely many new curves: Simply write one equation in two variables; the result, subject to a few not-very-demanding conditions, is another new curve. Descartes went even further. A single equation that involves exactly three variables— $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , for example—in general, describes a surface. This is called the fundamental principle of solid analytic geometry, and it, too, was known to Descartes. Today this is recognized as a very important idea, but its importance does not seem to have been recognized by Descartes. He gives a clear statement of the principle but does not follow it with either examples or further discussion. He understood the idea, but he did not use it.

The principles of analytic and solid geometry, so clearly enunciated by Descartes, were important because they pointed to a way of greatly enriching the vocabulary of mathematics. Conic sections and a handful of other curves, as well as cylinders, spheres, and some other surfaces, had been studied intensively for millennia, in part because few other curves and solids had mathematical descriptions. Descartes's insights had made these restrictions a thing of the past. His algebra and the fundamental principles of analytic geometry and solid geometry changed the development of mathematics in a fundamental way.

Descartes's discoveries in science, mathematics, and philosophy eventually attracted the attention of the queen of Sweden. Queen Christina invited him to become a member of her court, and Descartes accepted. Descartes was not a man who liked the cold. Nor did he like to get up early in the morning. (He had maintained his habit of spending his mornings in bed throughout his life.) On his arrival in September, Descartes must have been dismayed to learn that Queen Christina liked to receive her instruction from her new philosopher at five in the morning. Descartes died in the cold of a Swedish December, less than five months after arriving at the queen's court.

### Pierre de Fermat

The French mathematician and lawyer Pierre de Fermat (1601–65) also discovered analytic geometry, and he did so independently of René Descartes. Little is known of Fermat's early life. He was

educated as a lawyer, and it was in the field of law that he spent his working life. He worked in the local parliament in Toulouse, France, and later he worked in the criminal court. We also know that he had an unusual facility with languages. He spoke several languages and enjoyed reading classical literature. He is best remembered for his contributions to mathematics, which were profound.

Today much of what we know of Fermat is derived from the numerous letters that he wrote. He maintained an active correspondence with many of the leading mathematicians of his time. His letters show him to be humble, polite, and extremely curious. He made important contributions to the development of probability theory, the theory of numbers, and some aspects of calculus, as well as analytic geometry. Mathematics was, however, only one of his hobbies.

One activity that Fermat shared with many of the mathematicians of his time was the “reconstruction” of lost ancient texts. By the early 17th century some of the works of the ancient Greek mathematicians had again become available. These were, for the



*Ancient (and modern) Beaumont de Lomagne, France, birthplace of Pierre de Fermat (Office of Tourism, Beaumont de Lomagne)*

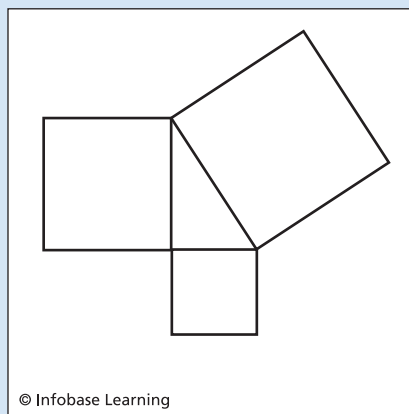
most part, the same texts with which we are familiar today. Most of the ancient texts, however, had been lost in the intervening centuries. Although the works had been lost, they had not been forgotten. The lost works were often known through commentaries written by other mathematicians. The ancient commentaries described the work of other mathematicians, but often they were much more than simple descriptions. Sometimes a commentary contained corrections, suggestions, or alternative proofs of known results; on occasion, the commentaries even contained entirely new theorems that extended those appearing in the work that was the subject of the commentary. Other times, however, a commentary simply mentioned the title of a work in passing. In any case, much of what we know about Greek mathematics and Greek mathematicians we know through the commentaries. It had become fashionable among mathematicians of the 17th century to try to reconstruct lost works on the basis of information gained from these secondary sources. Fermat attempted to reconstruct the book *Plane Loci* by Apollonius on the basis of information contained in a commentary written by the Greek geometer Pappus of Alexandria.

We will never know how close Fermat was in his reconstruction of the original, but the effort was not wasted. While attempting the reconstruction Fermat discovered the fundamental principle of analytic geometry: Under very general conditions, a single equation in two variables describes a curve in the plane.

As Descartes did, Fermat worked hard to establish algebraic descriptions of conic sections. Hyperbolas, ellipses, and parabolas were, after all, the classic curves of antiquity, and any attempt to express geometry in the language of algebra had at least to take these curves into account in order to be successful. Fermat was extremely thorough in his analysis. Again as Descartes did, he analyzed a very general second-degree equation in the variables  $x$  and  $y$ . Fermat's method was to manipulate the equation until he had reduced it to one of several standard forms. Each standard form represented a class of equations that were similar in the sense that each equation in the class could be transformed into a standard form via one or more elementary operations. (The standard

## FERMAT'S LAST THEOREM

One of Fermat's most famous insights is his so-called last theorem. This problem, which was finally solved late in the 20th century, is one of the most famous problems in the history of mathematics. It can, however, be understood as a generalization of a much older problem, the problem of finding Pythagorean triples. A Pythagorean triple is a set of three natural numbers with the property that if each number of the triple is squared then the sum of the two smaller squares equals the largest square. For example, the set (3, 4, 5) is a Pythagorean triple because, first, each number in the triple is a natural number, and, second, the three numbers satisfy the equation  $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ , where we can let  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  represent 3, 4, and 5, respectively. Another way of understanding the same problem is that we have represented the number 25, which is a perfect square, as the sum of two smaller perfect squares, 9 and 16. There are infinitely many Pythagorean triples, a fact of which the Mesopotamians seemed fully aware. (The Mesopotamians' work on Pythagorean triples is discussed in chapter 1.)



© Infobase Learning

*The sum of the areas of the two smaller squares equals the area of the largest square. The lengths of the sides of the triangle on which the squares are constructed are in the ratio 3:4:5.*

The generalization of the idea of Pythagorean triples of interest to Fermat involved writing natural numbers greater than 2 in place of the exponent in the equation  $x^2 + y^2 = z^2$ . The resulting equation is  $x^n + y^n = z^n$ , where  $n$  belongs to the set  $\{3, 4, 5, \dots\}$ . When  $n$  is equal to 3 we can interpret the problem geometrically: We are searching for three cubes, each of which has an edge that is an integral number of units long, such that the volume of the largest cube equals the sum of the two smaller volumes. When  $n$  is greater than 3 we can describe the problem in terms of hyper-cubes, but in higher dimensions there is

(continues)



## FERMAT'S LAST THEOREM

(continued)

no easy-to-visualize generalization of the two- and three-dimensional interpretations.

Fermat's goal, then, was to find a triplet of natural numbers that satisfies any one of the following equations  $x^3 + y^3 = z^3$ ,  $x^4 + y^4 = z^4$ ,  $x^5 + y^5 = z^5$ , . . . He was unable to find a single solution for any exponent larger than 2. In fact, he wrote that he had found a wonderful proof that *there are no solutions* for any  $n$  larger than 2, but the margin of the book in which he was writing was too small to contain the proof of this discovery. No trace of Fermat's proof has ever been discovered, but his cryptic note inspired generations of mathematicians, amateur and professional, to try to develop their own proofs. Before World War I a large monetary prize was offered, and this inspired many more faulty proofs.

Throughout most of the 20th century mathematicians proved that solutions did not exist for various special cases. For example, it was eventually proved that if a solution did exist for a particular value of  $n$ , then  $n$  had to be larger than 25,000. *Most* natural numbers, however, are larger than 25,000, so this type of result hardly scratches the surface. In the late 20th century, Fermat's theorem was finally proved by using mathematics that would have been entirely unfamiliar to Fermat. The British-born mathematician Andrew Wiles devised the proof, which is about 150 pages long.

Wiles and many others do not believe that Fermat actually had a proof. They think that the proof that Fermat thought he had discovered actually had an error in it. This kind of thing is not uncommon in a difficult logical argument; Wiles himself initially published an incorrect proof of Fermat's theorem. Nevertheless, unlike most of his successors, Fermat was an epoch-making mathematician. As a consequence it would be wrong to discount completely the possibility that he had found a valid proof using only mathematics from the 17th century, but it does not seem likely.

form of the equation depended on the initial values of the coefficients.) Finally, Fermat showed that each of these standard forms described the intersection of a plane with a double cone. He had found a correspondence between a class of curves and a class of

equations. This analysis was an important illustration of the utility of the new methods.

As Descartes did, Fermat used coordinates as a way of bridging the separate disciplines of algebra and geometry. Fermat, too, was comfortable using oblique coordinates as well as what we now call Cartesian coordinates.

Fermat and Descartes were each well aware of the work of the other. They even corresponded with each other through the French priest and mathematician Marin Mersenne (1588–1648). Mersenne was a friend of both men and a talented mathematician in his own right. In addition he opened his home to weekly meetings of mathematicians in the Paris area and worked hard to spread the news about discoveries in mathematics and the sciences throughout Europe.

Despite the many similarities in their work on analytic geometry and the fact that they both made their discoveries known to Mersenne, Descartes had much more influence on the development of the subject than did Fermat. One reason was that Fermat did not publish very much. In fact, Fermat only published a single paper during his lifetime. It was only later that his writings were collected and made generally available. Moreover, unlike Descartes, who had a flair for good algebraic notation, Fermat used the older, more awkward notation of François Viète.

Fermat's principal mathematical interest, however, was number theory, not analytic geometry. Although he tried to interest others in problems in the theory of numbers, Fermat was largely unsuccessful. For the most part, he worked on his favorite subject alone. His isolation, however, seemed to pose no barrier to creative thinking. He discovered a number of important results as well as a famous conjecture called Fermat's last theorem (see the sidebar).

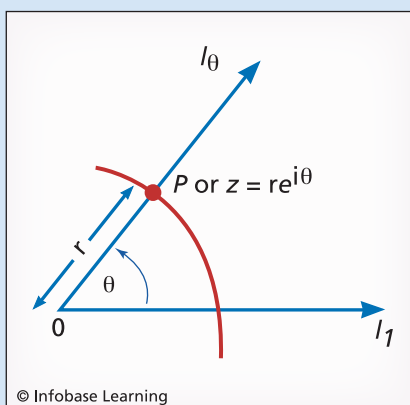
## The New Approach

Descartes and Fermat developed a new symbolic language that enabled them to bridge the gap that had separated algebra from geometry. This language contributed to progress in both fields.

Algebraic operations represented the manipulation of geometric objects, and geometric manipulations could now be expressed in a compact, algebraic form. Descartes and Fermat had made an important conceptual breakthrough, and unlike many other new mathematical ideas, these ideas were immediately recognized by their contemporaries as valuable.

Mathematicians interested in geometry exploited the fundamental principles of analytic and solid geometry to develop new ways of describing old curves and surfaces. They also explored the properties of entirely new curves and surfaces. The exploration

## POLAR COORDINATES



*Polar coordinates provide still another way to visualize complex numbers. Each method of displaying complex numbers reveals something new about the numbers themselves.*

It would be difficult to overestimate the effect of introducing coordinate systems into mathematics. For the first time, algebraic equations could be associated with graphs and graphs could be analyzed algebraically, and often the transition from geometry to algebra and from algebra to geometry was easy. Coordinate systems were a key factor in rapid progress in both algebra and geometry because a new insight into one discipline often translated into a new insight into the other.

Since Descartes introduced his coordinates, researchers have invented many other

coordinate systems. Each system is a different way of “organizing” space. The choice of coordinate system depends on the needs of the researcher. One of the most widely used non-Cartesian coordinate systems is called the polar coordinate system. It is an alternative way of placing coordinates on the plane.

of geometry from an algebraic point of view and the application of geometry to algebra challenged many fine mathematicians. Descartes and Fermat had opened up a new mathematical landscape, and for several generations thereafter, mathematicians worked to extend the ideas and techniques that Descartes and Fermat had pioneered.

The geometric interpretation of algebraic quantities also influenced other branches of mathematics and science. Perhaps most importantly, the language of analytic geometry, somewhat modified and augmented, became the language of analysis, that branch

A polar coordinate system requires a point,  $O$ , which corresponds to the origin, and a single ray emanating out from  $O$ , which we will call  $l_1$ . To identify a point  $P$  that is different from  $O$ , first specify the distance from  $O$  to  $P$ . If  $r$  represents the distance from  $O$  to  $P$ , then the set of all points that are  $r$  units away from  $O$  is a circle of radius  $r$  with  $O$  as its center. Consequently, knowing  $r$  only allows us to conclude that  $P$  is one of the points on the circle. Next extend a ray from  $O$  to  $P$ . Call this ray  $l_\theta$ . The Greek letter  $\theta$  represents the angle (measured counterclockwise) that is formed by  $l_1$  and  $l_\theta$ . The unique point where  $l_\theta$  intersects the circle of radius  $r$  center  $O$  is the point  $P$ . Each pair of coordinates  $(r, \theta)$  determines a unique point on the plane. (See the diagram.)

Polar coordinates also enable us to represent complex numbers in a way different from that of the Argand diagram. Recall from page 80, every complex number  $z$  can be represented on the Argand diagram in the form  $a + bi$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers. To convert this representation to a polar representation, notice that the distance from the origin to  $a + bi$  is  $\sqrt{a^2 + b^2}$ . (This is just the Pythagorean theorem.) Call this distance  $r$ . To complete the representation, we use the fact that  $e^{i\theta}$  identifies a point on the unit circle. (The “unit circle” is the circle of radius 1 centered at the origin.) If a ray is drawn from  $O$  through  $e^{i\theta}$ , that ray, which we will again call  $l_\theta$ , makes an angle of  $\theta$  radians with  $l_1$ . (Radians are just another set of units for measuring angles. The conversion factor is determined by the equation  $360^\circ = 2\pi$  radians.) The expression  $re^{i\theta}$  is, therefore, that point on the complex plane that lies  $r$  units away from  $O$  along the ray  $l_\theta$ . It is called the polar representation of a complex number. (The angle  $\theta$  is called the argument of the complex number. Refer, for example, to the interview with Dr. Bonita Saunders in the Afterword on page 187.)

of mathematics that arose out of calculus. Calculus was discovered twice, once by the British physicist and mathematician Sir Isaac Newton (1643–1727), and again independently by the German philosopher, mathematician, and diplomat Gottfried Wilhelm Leibniz (1646–1716).

The new analysis enabled the user to solve problems in geometry and physics that had previously been too difficult. In fact, early in the development of analysis certain problems in geometry that Descartes himself had believed to be unsolvable were solved. The techniques the analysts used often required a great deal of analytic geometry. Newton, for example, invented and employed a number of coordinate systems to facilitate his study of both physics and geometry. Some of these coordinate systems have proved to be more important than others, but in every case they were extensions of the concepts of Descartes and Fermat: Each coordinate system established a correspondence between ordered sets of real numbers and (geometric) points. Each coordinate system served as a bridge between the magnitudes of geometry—those continually varying quantities, such as length, area, and volume—and the numbers and symbols of algebra.

Newton often interpreted the variables that arose in his studies as representing geometric magnitudes. In his studies of physics, however, Newton sometimes interpreted variables as quantities of another sort: forces, accelerations, and velocities. We take symbolic notation for granted today, but the symbolic language developed by some of these mathematicians contributed substantially to progress in the mathematical and physical sciences. Newton's notation was, however, only a modest extension of the notation used in the analytic geometry of his time. Newton absorbed the ideas of Descartes and Fermat and used these ideas throughout his work. He managed to develop a new branch of mathematics that used their notation, but he did not contribute much new notation himself.

Leibniz, who was much more gifted in languages than was Newton, greatly extended the notation of Descartes and Fermat to create a highly expressive symbolic language that was ideally suited to the new mathematics. He used this notation to express

the ideas of analysis in a much more sophisticated way than that of Newton. He, too, generally interpreted the symbols that arose in his study of calculus as geometric or physical quantities. It was one of Leibniz's great accomplishments to extend the language of analytic geometry until it fit the problems in which he had an interest.

The role of good notation is sometimes expressed by saying that with good notation the pencil becomes as smart as the holder. To see the difference that good algebraic notation makes, knowing something about the early history of calculus is helpful. British mathematicians were more heavily influenced by Newton than they were by Leibniz. They considered it a matter of national honor to use the notation of their countryman. Unfortunately for them, Newton's notation was not expressive enough to be especially useful. In continental Europe, however, mathematicians wholeheartedly adopted Leibniz's notation, which was far superior to that of Newton. Leibniz devised his symbols to embody several basic concepts of calculus in order to communicate his ideas more effectively. This system facilitated discovery both for him and for those who followed. As a consequence calculus initially evolved much more slowly on the British Isles than it did on the Continent.

Today Leibniz's notation is still used in analysis, and the interpretation of algebraic symbols as geometric magnitudes or as physical quantities is still one of the basic conceptual tools of the geometer and the analyst. So thoroughly have algebraic notation and language pervaded geometry and analysis that it is doubtful whether mathematicians who specialize in these subjects could express their discoveries without the use of algebraic notation. But this was just the beginning. Algebra changed radically more than once in the years following the revolution of Descartes and Fermat.

# 6

## THE SEARCH FOR NEW STRUCTURES

Early in the 19th century the nature of algebra changed again. Extraordinary new ideas were introduced. They changed the nature of every branch of mathematics that depends on algebra—and today *every* branch of mathematics depends on algebra. They caused mathematicians to perceive their subject in new ways, and this new perspective enabled them to imagine and solve entirely new kinds of problems.

When the new algebra was first introduced, its importance was not generally recognized. Some of the first groundbreaking papers were dismissed because the reviewers, who were among the best mathematicians of their day, did not understand the ideas involved. To those responsible for the innovations, however, the power of the new ideas and techniques was apparent. Some of the first applications of the new algebra involved solving some of the oldest, most intractable problems in the history of mathematics. For example, the new algebra enabled mathematicians to prove that the three classic problems of antiquity, the squaring of the circle, the trisection of the angle, and the doubling of the cube (all performed with a straightedge and compass) are unsolvable. In addition, they showed that the problem of finding an algorithm for factoring any fifth-degree polynomial—an algorithm similar in spirit to the one that Tartaglia discovered in the 16th century for factoring a third-degree polynomial—could not be solved because the algorithm does not exist.

These very important discoveries were made under very difficult conditions. We often forget how important disease and violence

were in shaping much of the history of Europe. Their role is revealed in their effects on the lives of these highly creative mathematicians. These young people lived short, hard lives. They faced one difficulty after another as best they could, and they never stopped creating mathematics. On the night before he expected to die, the central figure in this mathematical drama, a young mathematician named Évariste Galois, spent his time hurriedly writing down as much of what he had learned about mathematics as possible so that his insights, which were wholly unrecognized during his brief life, would not be lost.

Broadly speaking the mathematical revolution that occurred in algebra early in the 19th century was a move away from computation and toward the identification and exploitation of the structural

underpinnings of mathematics. Underlying any mathematical system is a kind of logical structure. Often the structure is not immediately apparent, but research into these structures has generally proved to be the most direct way of understanding the mathematical system itself. About 200 years ago mathematicians began to identify and use some of these structures, and they have been busy extending their insights ever since.



*Beginning in the 19th century, mathematicians became increasingly preoccupied with the identification and study of algebraic “structures,” a term used to denote abstract algebraic concepts shared by very different-looking mathematical systems. (ImageF1)*



## Niels Henrik Abel

The Norwegian mathematician Niels Henrik Abel (1802–29) was one of the first and most important of the new mathematicians. As with many 17th-, 18th-, and 19th-century mathematicians, he was the son of a minister. The elder Abel was also a political activist, and he tutored Niels at home until the boy was 13 years old. Niels Abel attended secondary school in Christiania, now called Oslo. While there, he had the good fortune to have a mathematics teacher named Bernt Holmboe, who recognized his talent and worked with him to develop it. Under Holmboe's guidance Abel studied the works of earlier generations of mathematicians, such as Leonhard Euler, as well as the mathematical discoveries of his contemporaries, such as Carl Friedrich Gauss. In addition to exposing Abel to some of the most important works in mathematics, Holmboe also suggested original problems for Abel to solve. Abel's ability to do mathematics even at this young age was stunning.

Abel's father died shortly before his son was to enroll in university. The family, not rich to begin with, was left impoverished. Once again, Holmboe helped. He contributed money and helped raise additional funds to pay for Abel's education at the University of Christiania. Still under the tutelage of Holmboe, Abel began to do research in advanced mathematics. During his last year at the university, Abel searched for an algorithm that would enable him to solve all algebraic equations of fifth degree. (Recall that an algebraic equation is any equation of the form  $a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0$ , where the  $a_j$  are numbers, called coefficients, and the  $x^j$  is the variable  $x$  raised to the  $j$ th power. (Throughout the rest of this chapter, we will always suppose that all coefficients appearing in all polynomials that we consider are rational numbers.) The degree of the equation is defined as the highest exponent appearing in the equation. A second-degree, or quadratic, equation, for example, is any equation of the form  $a_2 x^2 + a_1 x + a_0 = 0$ .) Abel thought that he had found a general solution for all such equations, but he was quickly corrected. Far from being discouraged, he continued to study algebraic equations of degree greater than 4.

After graduation Abel wanted to meet and trade ideas with the best mathematicians in Europe, but there were two problems to overcome. First, he did not speak their languages; second, he had no money. With the help of a small grant he undertook the study of French and German so that he could become fluent enough to engage these mathematicians in conversation. During this time he also proved that there was no general algebraic formula for solving equations of the fifth degree.

Recall that centuries earlier Niccolò Fontana, also known as Tartaglia, had found an algorithm that enabled him to express solutions of any third-degree algebraic equation as a function of the coefficients appearing in the equations. Shortly thereafter Lodovico Ferrari had discovered an algorithm that enabled him to express solutions of any fourth-degree equation as functions of the coefficients. Similar methods for identifying the solutions to all second-degree equations had been discovered even earlier.

What had never been discovered—despite much hard work by many mathematicians—were similar methods that could enable one to express the roots of arbitrary equations of degree higher than 4 as functions of the coefficients. Abel showed that, at least in the case of fifth-degree equations, the long-sought-after formula did not exist. This, he believed, was a demonstration of his talent that would surely attract the attention of the mathematicians he wanted to meet. In 1824 he had the result published in pamphlet form at his own expense, and in 1825 he left Norway with a small sum given him by the Norwegian government to help him in his studies.

He was wrong about the pamphlet. He sent his pamphlet to Carl Friedrich Gauss, but Gauss showed no interest. This is puzzling since Abel had just solved one of the most intractable problems in mathematics. Although Gauss was no help, during the winter of 1825–26, while in Berlin, Abel made the acquaintance of the German mathematician August Leopold Crelle, the publisher of a mathematics journal. Abel and Crelle became friends, and subsequently Crelle published a number of Abel's papers on mathematics, including his work on the insolubility of fifth-degree equations. Abel also traveled to Paris and submitted

a paper to the Academy of Sciences. He hoped that this would gain him the recognition that he believed he deserved, but again nothing happened. Throughout much of his travel Abel had found it necessary to borrow money to survive. He eventually found himself deeply in debt, and then he was diagnosed with tuberculosis.

Abel returned to Norway in 1827. Still heavily in debt and without a steady source of income, he began to work as a tutor. Meanwhile news of his discoveries in algebra and other areas of mathematics had spread throughout the major centers of mathematics in Germany and France. Several mathematicians, including Crelle, sought a teaching position for him in the hope of providing Abel with a better environment to study and a more comfortable lifestyle. Meanwhile Abel continued to study mathematics in the relative isolation of his home in Norway. He died before he was offered the job that he so much wanted.

### Évariste Galois

Today the French mathematician Évariste Galois (1811–32) is described as a central figure in the history of mathematics, but during his life he had little contact with other mathematicians. This, however, was not for lack of trying. Galois very much wanted to be noticed.

Évariste Galois was born into a well-to-do family. Nicolas-Gabriel Galois, his father, was active in politics; Adelaide-Marie Demante, his mother, taught Galois at home until he was 12 years old. Because Évariste Galois was dead before his 21st birthday—and because the last several years of his life were extremely turbulent—it is safe to say that he received much of his formal education from his mother. In 1823 Galois enrolled in the Collège Royal de Louis-le-Grand. Initially he gave no evidence of a particular talent for mathematics. Soon, however, he began to do advanced work in mathematics with little apparent preparation. By the time he was 16 he had begun to examine the problem of finding roots to algebraic equations. This problem had already been solved by Abel, but Galois was not aware of this at the time.

Galois was off to a good start, but his luck soon took a turn for the worse. He submitted two formal papers describing his discoveries to the Academy of Sciences in Paris. These papers were sent to the French mathematician Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857) for review. Cauchy was one of the most prominent mathematicians of his era. He certainly had the imagination and the mathematical skill required to understand Galois's ideas, and a positive review or recommendation from Cauchy would have meant a lot to Galois. Cauchy lost both papers. This occurred in 1829, the same year that Galois's father com-

mitted suicide. Eight months later, in 1830, Galois tried again. He submitted another paper on the solution of algebraic equations to the Academy of Sciences. This time the paper was forwarded to the secretary of the academy, the French mathematician and Egyptologist Joseph Fourier (1768–1830). Fourier died before any action was taken on Galois's paper. The paper that was in Fourier's possession was lost as well. Meanwhile Galois had twice applied for admission to the École Polytechnique, which had one of the best departments of mathematics in France. It was certainly the school to attend if one wanted to work as a mathematician. Both times Galois failed to gain admission.

Galois shifted his emphasis and enrolled in the École Normale Supérieure. He hoped to become a teacher of mathematics, but as his father had, Galois became involved in politics. Politics was important to Galois, and he was not shy about making his ideas known. At the time this activity involved considerable personal risk.



*Évariste Galois. Before his death at the age of 20, he completely changed the nature of algebraic research and the history of mathematics. (Michael Avandam)*

France had been embroiled in political instability and violence since before Galois was born: The French Revolution began in 1789. It was followed by a period of political terror, during which thousands of people were executed. The military leader and later emperor Napoléon Bonaparte eventually seized power and led French forces on several ultimately unsuccessful campaigns of conquest. The results were the defeat of the French military and Napoléon's imprisonment in 1815. Napoléon's defeat did nothing to resolve the conflict between those who favored monarchy and those who favored democracy. Galois was one of the latter. In 1830 the reigning French monarch, Charles X, was exiled, but he was replaced with still another monarch. The republicans—Galois among them—were disappointed and angry. Galois wrote an article expressing his ideas and was expelled from the *École Normale Supérieure*. He continued his activism. He was arrested twice for his views. The second arrest resulted in a six-month jail sentence.

Despite these difficulties Galois did not stop learning about mathematics. In 1831 he tried again. He rewrote his paper and resubmitted it to the academy. This time the paper fell into the hands of the French mathematician Siméon-Denis Poisson (1781–1840). In the history of mathematics, Poisson, like Cauchy and Fourier, is an important figure, but with respect to his handling of Galois's paper, the best that can be said is that he did not lose it. Poisson's review of Galois's paper was brief and to the point: He (Poisson) did not understand it. Because he did not understand it, he could not recommend it for publication. He suggested that the paper be expanded and clarified.

This was the last opportunity Galois had to see his ideas in print. In 1832 at the age of 20 years and seven months, Galois was challenged to a duel. The circumstances of the duel are not entirely clear. Romance and politics are two common, and presumably mutually exclusive, explanations. In any case Galois, although he was sure he would not survive the duel, accepted the challenge. He wrote down his ideas about algebra in a letter to a friend. The contents of the letter were published four months after Galois died in the duel. This was the first publication in the branch of mathematics today known as Galois theory.

## Galois Theory and the Doubling of the Cube

To convey some idea of how Galois theory led to a resolution of the three classical unsolved problems in Greek geometry we examine the problem of doubling the cube. Originally the problem was stated as follows: Given a cube, find the dimensions of a second cube whose volume is precisely twice as large as the volume of the first. If we suppose that the length of an edge on the first cube is one unit long, then the volume of the first cube is one cubic unit: Volume = length  $\times$  width  $\times$  height. The unit might be a meter, an inch, or a mile; these details have no effect on the problem. If the volume of the original cube is one cubic unit then the problem reduces to finding the dimensions of a cube whose volume is two cubic units. If we suppose that the letter  $x$  represents the length of one edge of the larger cube, then the volume of this new cube is  $x^3$ , where  $x$  satisfies the equation  $x^3 = 2$ . In other words,  $x = \sqrt[3]{2}$ , where the notation  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  (called the cube root of 2) represents the number that, when cubed, equals 2. The reason that the problem was so difficult is that it called for the construction of a segment of length  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  unit *using nothing but a straightedge and compass*. It turns out that this is impossible.

To show that it is not possible to construct a segment of length  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  we need two ideas. The first idea is the geometric notion of a constructible number. The second is the algebraic notion of a field. We begin with an explanation of a constructible number.

We say that a number  $x$  is constructible if given a line segment one unit long, we can construct a line segment  $x$  units long using only a straightedge and compass. (From now on when we use the word *construct*, we mean “construct using only a straightedge and compass.”) A straightedge and compass are very simple implements. There is not much that can be done with them. We can, for example, use the compass to measure the distance between two points by placing the point of the compass on one geometric point and adjusting the compass so that the other point of the compass is on the second geometric point. This creates a “record” of the distance between the points. Also if we are given a line, we can use the compass to construct a second line perpendicular to the first. Besides these there are a few other

basic techniques with which every geometry student is familiar. All other geometric constructions are some combination of this handful of basic techniques.

Some numbers are easy to construct. For example, given a segment one unit long, it is easy to construct a segment two units long. One way to accomplish this is to extend the unit line segment, and then use the compass to measure off a second line segment that is one unit long and placed so that it is end to end with the original unit segment. This construction proves that the number 2 is constructible. In a similar way, we can construct a segment that is  $n$  units long where  $n$  is any natural number. Our first conclusion is that all natural numbers are constructible.

We can also use our straightedge and compass to represent the addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division of natural numbers. To add two natural numbers—which we call  $m$  and  $n$ —we just construct the two corresponding line segments—one of length  $m$  and one of length  $n$ —and place them end to end. The result is a line segment of length  $m + n$ . In a similar way we can represent the difference of the numbers  $n - m$ : To accomplish this we just measure “out”  $n$  units, and “back”  $m$  units. It is also true, although we do not show it, that given any two natural numbers  $m$  and  $n$ , we can construct a line segment of length  $mn$  and a line segment of length  $m/n$ , provided, of course, that  $n$  is not 0. What this indicates is that every rational number is constructible.

*Some* irrational numbers are also constructible. We can, for example, use a straightedge and compass to construct a square each of whose sides is one unit long. The diagonal of the square is of length  $\sqrt{2}$  units long, as an application of the Pythagorean theorem demonstrates. This shows that  $\sqrt{2}$  is also a constructible number. We can even construct more complicated-looking numbers. For example, because  $\sqrt{2}$  is constructible, we can also construct a line segment of length  $1 + \sqrt{2}$ . We can use this segment to construct a square with sides of length  $1 + \sqrt{2}$ . The diagonal of this square is of length  $\sqrt{6 + 4\sqrt{2}}$ , as another application of the Pythagorean theorem shows. This proves that this more complicated-looking number is constructible as well. These processes



can be repeated as many times as desired. The result can be some very complicated-looking numbers. The question then is, Can  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  be constructed by some similar sequence of steps?

If we can show that  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  is not constructible then we will have demonstrated that it is impossible to double the cube by using a straightedge and compass as our only tools. To do this we need the algebraic concept of a field.

We define a *field* as any set of numbers that is *closed* under addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division except we must explicitly exclude division by zero. (Division by zero has no meaning.) By closed we mean that if we combine any two numbers in the set through the use of one of the four arithmetic operations, the result is another number in the set. For example, the rational numbers form a field because no matter how we add, subtract, or multiply any pair of rational numbers the result is another rational number, and if we divide any rational number by a nonzero rational number the result is another rational number. Similarly, the set of real numbers forms a field. There are also many different fields that contain all of the rational numbers but do not contain all of the real numbers. These “intermediary” fields are the ones that are important to proving the impossibility of doubling the cube.

To see an example of one of these intermediary fields, consider the set of all numbers of the form  $a + b\sqrt{2}$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are chosen from the set of rational numbers. No matter how we add, subtract, multiply, or divide two numbers of the form  $a + b\sqrt{2}$  the result is always another number of the same form. This field is called an extension of the rational numbers. We say that we have adjoined  $\sqrt{2}$  to the rational numbers to obtain this extension. Every number in the field consisting of  $\sqrt{2}$  adjoined to the rational numbers, which we represent with the symbol  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ , is constructible. (Notice that when  $b = 0$  the resulting number is rational. This shows that the field of rational numbers is a *subfield* of  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ —that is, the field of rational numbers is a proper subset of  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ .)

Having created the extension  $Q(\sqrt{2})$  we can use it to make an even larger field by adjoining the square root of some element

*(text continues on page 114)*



## DOUBLING THE CUBE WITH A STRAIGHTEDGE AND COMPASS IS IMPOSSIBLE

Using the information in the text, we can show how the “new algebra” can be used to complete the proof that it is impossible to construct  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  with a straightedge and compass. To appreciate the proof one needs to keep in mind two facts:

1. The number  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  is irrational.
2. The graph of the polynomial  $y = x^3 - 2$  crosses the  $x$ -axis only once.

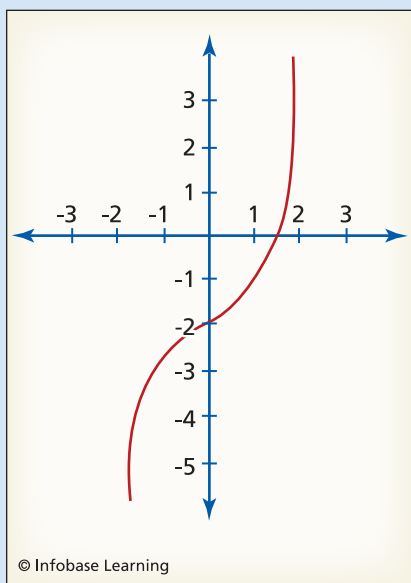
Here is the proof: Suppose that we adjoin  $\sqrt[3]{k_1}, \sqrt[3]{k_2}, \sqrt[3]{k_3}, \dots, \sqrt[3]{k_n}$  to the field of rational numbers, one after another, in the same way that  $\sqrt{2}$  and then  $\sqrt{a + b\sqrt{2}}$  are adjoined to the rational numbers in the main body of the text. Our hypothesis is that if we adjoin enough of these numbers to the field of rational numbers, we eventually create a field that contains  $\sqrt[3]{2}$ . (We can use this hypothesis to create two contradictions that prove that doubling the cube with a straightedge and compass is impossible.)

We begin our work with the rational numbers, which we represent with the letter  $F_0$ . By fact 1,

$\sqrt[3]{2}$  does not belong to  $F_0$  so we have to adjoin at least one number to  $F_0$  in order that our new field will contain  $\sqrt[3]{2}$ .

We adjoin  $\sqrt[3]{k_1}$  to the rational numbers where  $k_1$  belongs to  $F_0$  but  $\sqrt[3]{k_1}$  does not. We get a new field that we call  $F_1$ . (Every number in  $F_1$  is of the form  $a + b\sqrt[3]{k_1}$ , where  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $k_1$  are chosen from  $F_0$ , the field of rational numbers.)

Next we choose  $k_2$  from  $F_1$  and then adjoin  $\sqrt[3]{k_2}$  to  $F_1$  to create a new field, which we call  $F_2$ . (The numbers in  $F_2$  are of the form  $c + d\sqrt[3]{k_2}$ , where  $c$  and  $d$  represent numbers taken from  $F_1$ .) We continue the process until we reach  $F_n$ , which is obtained by adjoining  $\sqrt[3]{k_n}$  to the field  $F_{n-1}$ . The ele-



*The graph of the equation  $y = x^3 - 2$ . Notice that the graph crosses the  $x$ -axis only once.*

ments in  $F_n$  are of the form  $p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ , where  $p$ ,  $q$ , and  $k_n$  belong to the field  $F_{n-1}$ . (The fields are like traditional Russian matryoshka dolls, each one fitting inside a slightly larger one, beginning with the smallest, the field of rational numbers, and ending with the largest,  $F_n$ .) We assume that each time we adjoin some  $\sqrt[k_j]{k_j}$  it makes the field to which we adjoin it bigger. In other words, we suppose that it is never the case that  $\sqrt[k_j]{k_j}$  belongs to  $F_{j-1}$ , the field from which  $k_j$  was drawn. (Otherwise every number of the form  $e + f\sqrt[k_j]{k_j}$  would be in  $F_{j-1}$  and we would not have made  $F_{j-1}$  bigger by adjoining  $\sqrt[k_j]{k_j}$  to it.) Finally we assume that we stop as soon as we have a field that contains  $\sqrt[3]{2}$ . This means that  $F_n$  contains  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  but  $F_{n-1}$  does not.

To prove that the cube cannot be doubled by using a straightedge and compass, we work with the equation  $\sqrt[3]{2} = p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ . This equation must be true for some numbers  $p$ ,  $q$ , and  $k_n$  in the field  $F_{n-1}$  because we have assumed that  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  lies in  $F_n$  and every number in  $F_n$  can be written in this form. We use this equation for  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  to obtain two contradictions. The contradictions show that the hypothesis that  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  belongs to  $F_n$  is impossible.

The computations go like this: Cube both sides of the equation  $\sqrt[3]{2} = p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ —that is, multiply each side by itself three times—to get  $2 = (p^3 + 3q^2k_n) + (3p^2q + b^3k_n)\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ . Now consider  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$ , the coefficient of  $\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ .

- Contradiction 1: If  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  is not equal to 0, then we can solve for  $\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  in terms of numbers that all belong to the field  $F_{n-1}$ . Since  $F_{n-1}$  is a field we conclude that  $\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  belongs to  $F_{n-1}$  and our assumption that  $F_n$  is bigger than  $F_{n-1}$  was in error. This is the first contradiction.
- Contradiction 2: If the number  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  equals 0, then cube the number  $p - q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  to get  $(p^3 + 3q^2k_n) - (3p^2q + b^3k_n)\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ . Since  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  is 0 it must be the case that  $p - q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  is also a cube root of 2. [Because if  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  is 0 then both the cube of  $p - q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  and the cube of  $p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  are equal, and we have already assumed that  $p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  is the cube root of 2.] Therefore, the graph of  $y = x^3 - 2$  must cross the  $x$  axis at  $p - q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$  and at  $p + q\sqrt[k_n]{k_n}$ . This contradicts fact number 2.

The situation is hopeless. If we assume that  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  is not 0 we get a contradiction. If we assume that  $(3p^2q + b^3k_n)$  is 0 we get a contradiction. This shows that our assumption that we could construct  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  was in error, and we have to conclude that  $\sqrt[3]{2}$  is not constructible with a straightedge and compass. This is one of the more famous proofs in the history of mathematics.

*(text continued from page 111)*

of  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ . The element we adjoin is of the form  $\sqrt{a + b\sqrt{2}}$ . Every number in this field has the form  $c + d\sqrt{a + b\sqrt{2}}$ , where  $c$  and  $d$  are chosen from  $Q(\sqrt{2})$  and  $a + b\sqrt{2}$  is positive. We can do this as often as we want. Each new field can be chosen so that it is larger than the previous one. Every number in each such extension is constructible, and conversely, every constructible number belongs to a field that is formed in this way.

To complete the proof we need only show that no matter how many times we extend the rational numbers in the manner just described, the resulting field never contains the number  $\sqrt[3]{2}$ . The proof uses the concept of field and requires us to complete a few complicated-looking multiplication problems and recall a bit of analytic geometry (see the sidebar for details).

### Algebraic Structures

Some fields are smaller than others. To repeat an example already given, the field of rational numbers is “smaller” than the field defined as  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ , because every number in  $Q(\sqrt{2})$  is of the form  $a + b\sqrt{2}$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are rational numbers; if we consider the case where  $b$  is 0 and  $a$  is any rational number, then it is apparent that  $Q(\sqrt{2})$  contains every rational number. However, when  $b = 1$  and  $a = 0$ , we can see that  $Q(\sqrt{2})$  also contains  $\sqrt{2}$ , which is not rational. Because the rational numbers are a proper subset of  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ , we can say that the field of rational numbers is a subfield of  $Q(\sqrt{2})$ .

For each algebraic equation there is always a smallest field that contains all the roots of the equation. This is the field we obtain by adjoining the smallest possible set of numbers to the set of rational numbers. This field, which is determined by the roots of the polynomial of interest, is important enough to have its own name. It is called the splitting field. Depending on the polynomial, the splitting field can have a fairly complicated structure. The numbers that make up the field can sometimes be difficult to write down; they are usually not constructible; and

as with all the fields that we consider, the splitting field contains infinitely many numbers. Furthermore, it must be closed under the four arithmetic operations: addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division. Fields are complicated objects. It was one of Galois's great insights that he was able to rephrase the problem of solving algebraic equations so that it was simple enough to solve. His solution involved another type of algebraic structure called a group.

The idea of a group is one of the most important ideas in mathematics. There are many kinds of groups. We can create an example of a symmetry group by cutting a square out of the center of a piece of paper. Suppose that, by moving clockwise about the square, we number each of the exterior corners as shown. Suppose, too, that we number the corresponding interior corners so that when we replace the square inside the square hole, each number on the square matches up with its mate (see Figure A).

If we now rotate the square  $90^\circ$  clockwise about its center, the number 1 on the square matches up with the number 2 on the hole. The number 2 on the square matches the number 3 on the hole, and so on (see Figure B).

If we rotate the square  $180^\circ$  clockwise out of its original

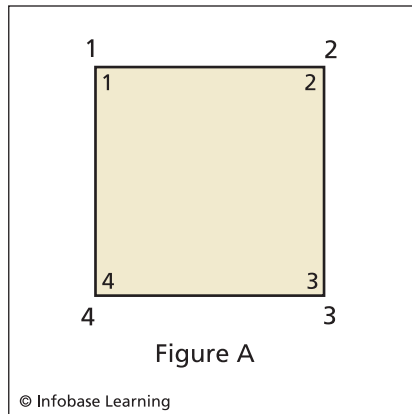


Figure A, the identity permutation

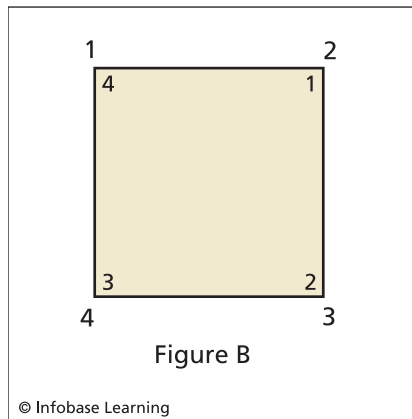


Figure B, a  $90^\circ$  clockwise rotation

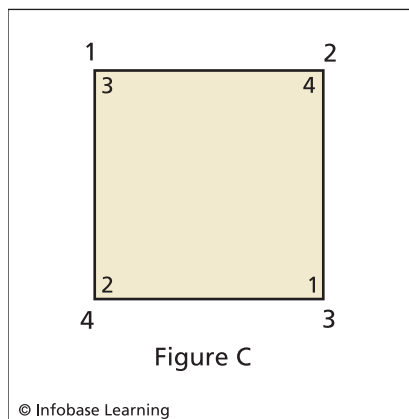
position, we get a new configuration (see Figure C).

There are two other rotations of interest. One entails rotating the square  $270^\circ$  clockwise—this yields a fourth configuration (see Figure D)—and the last rotation entails rotating the square  $360^\circ$  clockwise (see Figure A again). Notice that making the last rotation has the same effect as not moving the square at all.

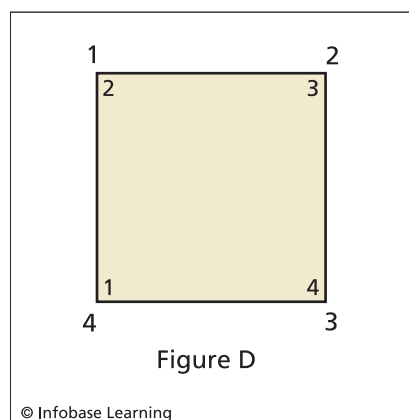
All four of these rotations form a group because taken together they exhibit the following four properties, which are the defining properties of a mathematical group:

1. One rotation followed by another yields a third.
2. Rotations are associative in the sense that if  $\pi_1$ ,  $\pi_2$ , and  $\pi_3$  are three rotations, then

they obey the associative law—namely,  $\pi_1 \circ (\pi_2 \circ \pi_3) = (\pi_1 \circ \pi_2) \circ \pi_3$ , where the symbol “ $\circ$ ” means that two rotations are combined by first performing the rotation on the right of the pair and then performing the rotation on the left member of the pair. The associative law means that it does not matter whether we first combine  $\pi_2$  and  $\pi_3$  and then combine  $\pi_1$  with  $\pi_2 \circ \pi_3$ —this is the left side of the equation—or whether we combine  $\pi_1$  with  $\pi_2$  and then combine  $\pi_1 \circ \pi_2$  with  $\pi_3$  as is done on the right side of the equation.



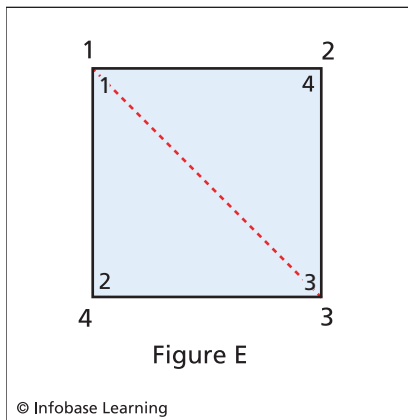
*Figure C, a  $180^\circ$  clockwise rotation*



*Figure D, a  $270^\circ$  clockwise rotation*

3. The set of rotations associated with the square has an “identity rotation,” which is usually represented with the letter  $e$ . When combined with any other rotation, the identity rotation leaves the other rotation unchanged. In symbols:  $e \circ \pi = \pi \circ e = \pi$ . (The identity rotation, which means rotating the square  $0^\circ$ , is analogous to the number zero in the group of real numbers under the operation of addition.)
4. Finally, for each rotation, another rotation exists that undoes the work of the first. This second rotation is called the inverse of the first. For example, rotation by  $270^\circ$  is the inverse of rotation by  $90^\circ$ .

The four-element group described in the previous paragraph is also a *subgroup*—that is, it is a group that is part of a larger group of symmetries of the square. We can get more symmetries in our group by “reflecting” the square about a line of symmetry. Physically this can be accomplished by flipping the square over along one of its lines of symmetry. For example, we can flip the square along a line connecting two opposite corners. Under these circumstances two corners of the square remain motionless while the other two corners swap places. If, for example, we reflect the square about the line connecting the corners 1 and 3, then corners 2 and 4 of the square change places while 1 and 3 remain motionless (see Figure E). This configuration (corners 1 and 3 fixed and corners 2 and 4 exchanged) is new; we cannot obtain this reflection through any sequence of rotations, but it is not the only reflection that we can generate. We can obtain still another configuration of the square within its



*Figure E, a reflection of the square about the line connecting corners 1 and 3*

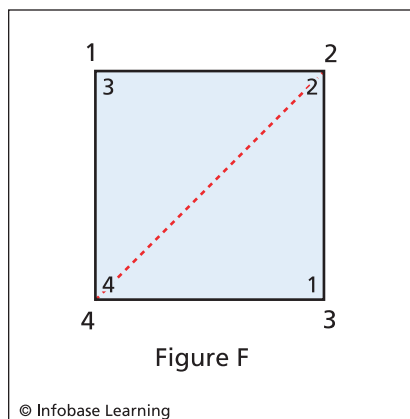
hole by reflecting the square about its other diagonal (see Figure F). There are two other reflections—each is obtained by reflecting the square about lines passing through the center of the square and the midpoint of a side. We omit the details. Allowing all possible combinations of rotations and reflections gives us a larger group than the group of rotations. (Of course, there are mathematical formulas that do the same thing that we are doing with paper, but the mathematical methods

are simply a symbolic substitute for rotating the square through multiples of  $90^\circ$  and reflecting it about its axes of symmetry.)

The group of symmetry transformations of the square can also be interpreted as a group of permutations of the integers 1, 2, 3, and 4. A permutation group acts on a set of objects—in this case numbers—and changes their order. Rotation of the square by  $90^\circ$  degrees, for example, when applied to the set (1, 2, 3, 4) yields (4, 1, 2, 3). The outside numbers on the diagram show the original order, and the inside numbers show the new (or permuted) order. (See Figure B, page 115.)

Similarly, the reflection shown in Figure F permutes (1, 2, 3, 4) so that we obtain (3, 2, 1, 4). Mathematically, it does not matter whether we represent what we are doing as a group of symmetry transformations of the square or as a group of permutations of the numbers 1, 2, 3, and 4. The group of symmetry transformations and the corresponding group of permutations are two instances of the same abstract group. In what follows, we use permutation groups, but we could just as easily talk about symmetry groups of various geometric figures.

So far we have examined only the permutations obtainable by rotating and reflecting a square, but we can generate other, very



*Figure F, a reflection of the square about the line connecting corners 2 and 4*

different, permutation groups by using other geometric figures. Depending on the figures we choose to study, the permutation groups we generate may have more or fewer elements than the permutation group associated with the square. The subgroups associated with each permutation group also depend on the group that we study. Galois did not invent permutation groups, but he did find an extraordinarily creative use for them.

Galois noticed that to each (infinite) splitting field there corresponds a unique (finite) permutation group. The algebraic structure of two splitting fields is “the same” if they have the same permutation group. Even better, the permutation group contains important information about the splitting field and the algebraic equation from which the field is obtained. In particular, an algebraic equation can be solved if the permutation group has a certain structure. If the permutation group lacks this structure then there is no algorithm analogous to those discovered by Tartaglia and Ferrari that would enable one to solve the equation.

It might seem as if Galois simply swapped the difficulties of working with algebraic equations for the difficulties of working with splitting fields, then swapped the problems he encountered with splitting fields for a new set of problems associated with permutation groups. There is, however, a real advantage to studying the permutation group instead of the splitting field or the algebraic equation: The group problem is simple enough to solve. Unlike the splitting fields, which have four operations and infinitely many numbers, each permutation group has only one operation and finitely many elements. Galois swapped a harder problem for an easier problem. The group problem was manageable; the field problem was not.

This is an example of what is meant by *structure* in mathematics. Each splitting field has many properties in common with other fields—that is why they are all called fields—but there are differences between the fields as well. These finer points of structure are determined by the nature of the roots that are adjoined to the rational numbers in order to get the splitting field. The finer points of structure in the field determine the properties of the permutation group. In this sense the structure of the group reflects



## THE IMPORTANCE OF GROUP THEORY

Group theory occupies a central place in contemporary mathematics. The four axioms that define a group have been supplemented in various ways to produce many different classes of groups. Some groups consist of finitely many elements; some have infinitely many elements; some are “finitely generated,” which means that there is a finite subset of the group, which we can call  $g_1, g_2, \dots, g_n$ , such that every element in the group can be represented as a product of powers of these  $n$  elements; and other groups are not finitely generated. Mathematicians have studied many special classes of groups, and many types of groups have not yet been thoroughly studied.

But the importance of group theory extends far beyond algebra because the group structure can be found imbedded in many different “systems,” both in and outside mathematics. Sometimes the existence of the group structure is evident—the set of all integers under the operation of addition, for example, is a system with a group structure—but other times the group structure is less obvious. In geometry, for example, Euclid asserted that two triangles are congruent when one triangle can be moved so that it coincides with the other. This statement is not quite precise enough for modern mathematicians, but once it is made precise it can be proved that the set of all such motions forms a group, which is now called the group of Euclidean transformations. Euclidean geometry can, in fact, be characterized as the study of exactly those properties of a figure that remain unchanged by the group of Euclidean transformations. Other geometries have their own somewhat different transformation groups associated with them, and each transformation group has its own peculiar algebraic properties. By comparing transformation groups, one can determine how various geometries are related to each other. Group theory is an important tool in the study of geometry.

the structure of the field, but, because the group is easier to understand, solving problems associated with the field by studying its associated permutation group becomes possible.

Our description of Galois’s work is a modern one. It describes how we see what Galois did, but it almost certainly does not describe Galois’s own view of his work. Galois used permutation groups as a tool in order to better understand algebraic equations.

Group theory is useful in science as well. The special theory of relativity, for example, makes a number of exotic predictions about the nature of space and time and the ways that space and time are related, but the physical theory can be described in terms of a particular (mathematical) group called the group of Lorentz transformations. Mathematically, the special theory of relativity, which is most closely associated with the work of the German-born American physicist Albert Einstein (1879–1955), can be summarized by saying that the laws of nature are invariant with respect to the group of Lorentz transformations. A physical interpretation of the group of Lorentz transformations is that they reveal how measurements made in one inertial reference frame apply to a different inertial reference frame. (An observer's *reference frame* is the coordinate system most natural to the observer. A reference frame is *inertial* when it is moving at constant velocity.) Loosely speaking, the Lorentz transformations, which are named after the Dutch physicist Hendrik Antoon Lorentz (1853–1928), enable observers in different reference frames to view the world as others see it.

In chemistry, symmetry groups can be associated with many molecules. The symmetry group of a particular molecule is the largest group of spatial transformations that leaves the molecule in the same volume of space after the transformation as it was before. The idea is similar to the symmetry group associated with the square. (That group is described in figures A through F in this chapter.) The symmetry group carries information about the shape of the molecule, and it also carries information about the chemical properties of the molecule. The study of these groups is an important part of theoretical chemistry.

It would be hard to overstate the importance of group theory to the development of contemporary mathematics and science. Groups are some of the most fundamental logical structures in mathematics and nature, and they provide a framework in which many fundamental questions about mathematics and science can be asked and answered.

The object of his study was algebraic equations, not groups. It must have been more or less obvious to him as it is obvious to most people who work with permutation groups that all permutation groups share the four simple properties that define a group. (These properties are listed on page 116 in the discussion of the group of symmetry transformations of the square.) And Galois, who was one of the most inventive mathematicians of his era, must

have recognized that all four of these very general statements are true, but he regarded these statements in a much narrower way than contemporary mathematicians. Today, mathematicians consider abstract groups, sets composed of elements represented by letters, and they suppose that there exists an operation on this set of letters, and they suppose that under this operation the letters combine according to the four group axioms. (They might also impose some other conditions depending on the problem they are considering.)

Groups can be used as tools to understand specific systems. This is what Galois did, but today they are also used to model classes of systems. Research into group theory can reveal facts about all of the systems that share a particular group structure—no matter how different-looking the systems are. Or to say the same thing in a slightly different way: Any facts that one can deduce from the study of an abstract group will apply to every system with the same group structure.

The mental leap that mathematicians made in passing from individual instances of groups to the study of abstract groups is similar to what an archaeologist does when studying the architecture of a vanished civilization for the first time. The first building that the archaeologist studies is always described in particulars such as, “This building used structural elements made from a certain material. The elements in the building were of a certain thickness. They were placed at specific points within the structure. They were joined in a certain way.” But after the archaeologist has studied the ruins of many such buildings, it becomes possible to make very broad statements about the building practices of the civilization such as, “The buildings of this time period utilized the following materials. Structural elements were joined using the following techniques, etc.” The general statements summarize the knowledge obtained from many particular observations.

Throughout the 19th century, mathematicians operated like our archaeologist encountering the first few buildings. They studied many different mathematical systems, and they discovered that groups were present in many of these systems. Originally, they concentrated on the specifics of the system and used groups as

tools to further their understanding. They did not see the “big picture.” They did not usually see the group structure as something that was worth studying in its own right. But early in the 20th century, mathematicians began to formulate more general statements about the structure of mathematical systems. The systems might be sets of numbers or polynomials or some other set of objects, and the operation might be addition or multiplication or some other operation entirely. After they had accumulated enough examples, they sought to isolate the properties shared by all of these systems and study only those shared properties. The result was a series of statements that were true for all such systems. Much of modern algebra now focuses on uncovering and understanding the logical architecture of mathematics, and groups are a big part of that architecture.

The discovery of these group methods—even in a limited way—required an especially creative mathematical mind. Galois’s ideas represented a huge leap forward in mathematical thinking, and it would be some time before other mathematicians caught up. Today groups are one of the central concepts in all of mathematics. They play a prominent role in geometry, analysis, algebra, probability, and many branches of applied science as well. The search for the structures that underlie mathematics, and the search for criteria—analogueous to Galois’s permutation groups—that enable mathematicians to determine when two structures are really “the same” are now central themes of algebraic research. In many ways these ideas are responsible for the ever-increasing pace of mathematical progress. What we now call modern, or abstract, algebra begins with the work of a French teenager almost 200 years ago.

# 7

## THE LAWS OF THOUGHT

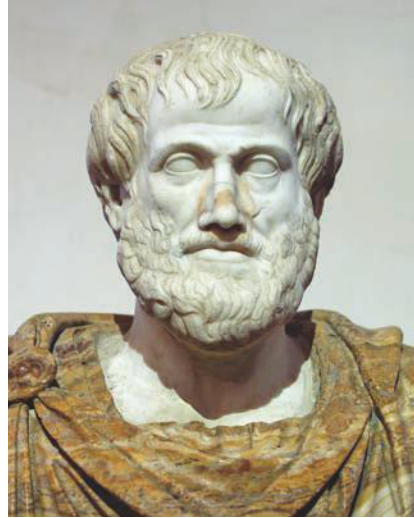
Algebra changed radically more than once during the 19th century. Previously Descartes had interpreted his variables as magnitudes, that is, lengths of line segments. He used algebra as a tool in his study of geometry. Leibniz and Newton had interpreted the variables that arose in their computations as geometric magnitudes or as forces or accelerations. On the one hand, these interpretations helped them state their mathematical questions in a familiar context. They enabled Newton and Leibniz to discover new relationships among the symbols in their equations, so in this sense these interpretations were useful. On the other hand, these interpretations were not necessary. One can study the equations of interest to Descartes, Newton, and Leibniz without imposing any extramathematical interpretation on the symbols employed. At the time no one thought to do this.

In the 19th century mathematicians began to look increasingly inward. They began to inquire about the true subject matter of mathematics. The answer for many of them was that mathematics is solely concerned with relationships among symbols. They were not interested in what the symbols represented, only in the rules that governed the ways symbols are combined. To many people, even today, this sounds sterile. What is surprising is that their inquiries about relationships among symbols resulted in some very important, practical applications, the most notable of which is the digital computer.

### Aristotle

This new and more abstract concept of mathematics began in the branch of knowledge called logic. Early in the 19th century,

logic was synonymous with the works of the Greek philosopher Aristotle (384 B.C.E.–322 B.C.E.). Aristotle was educated at the academy of the philosopher Plato, which was situated in Athens. He arrived at the academy at the age of 17 and remained until Plato's death 20 years later. When Plato died, Aristotle left Athens and traveled for the next 12 years. He taught in different places and established two schools. Finally he returned to Athens, and at the age of 50 he established the school for which he is best remembered, the Lyceum. Aristotle taught there for the next 12



*This statue of Aristotle is a Roman copy of a Greek original. Aristotle's ideas about logic were central to Western thinking for 2,000 years.*  
(Ludovisi Collection)

years. The Lyceum was a place that encouraged free inquiry and research. Aristotle himself taught numerous subjects and wrote about what he discovered. For Aristotle all of this abruptly ended in 323 B.C.E., when Alexander the Great died. There was widespread resentment of Alexander in Athens, and Aristotle, who had been Alexander's tutor, felt the wrath of the public directed at him after the death of his former student. Aristotle left Athens under threat of violence. He died one year later.

Part of Aristotle's contribution to logic was his study of something called the syllogism. This is a very formal, carefully defined type of reasoning. It begins with categorical statements, usually called categorical propositions. A proposition is a simple statement. "The car is black" is an example of a proposition. Many other expressions are not categorical propositions. "Do you wish you had a black car?" and "Buy the black car" are examples of statements that are not propositions. These types of sentences are not part of Aristotle's inquiry. Instead his syllogisms are defined only for the categorical proposition.

A categorical proposition is a statement of relationship between two classes. “All dogs are mammals” is an example of a categorical proposition. It states that every creature in the class of dogs also belongs to the class of mammals. We can form other categorical propositions about the class of dogs and the class of mammals. Some are more sensible than others:

- “Some dogs are mammals.”
- “No dogs are mammals.”
- “Some dogs are not mammals.”

are all examples of categorical propositions. We can strip away the content of these four categorical propositions about the class of dogs and the class of mammals and consider the four general *types* of categorical expressions in a more abstract way:

- All  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's.
- Some  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's.
- No  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's.
- Some  $x$ 's are not  $y$ 's.

Here we can either let the  $x$ s represent dogs and the  $y$ s represent mammals or let the letters represent some other classes. We can even refrain from assigning any extramathematical meaning at all to the letters.

We can use the four types of categorical propositions to form one or more syllogisms. A syllogism consists of three categorical propositions. The first two propositions are premises. The third proposition is the conclusion. Here is an example of a syllogism:

- Premise 1: All dogs are mammals.
- Premise 2: All poodles are dogs.
- Conclusion: All poodles are mammals.

We can form similar sorts of syllogisms by using the other three types of categorical propositions.

Aristotle's writings were collected and edited by Andronicus of Rhodes, the last head of Aristotle's Lyceum. This occurred about three centuries after Aristotle's death. The *Organon*, as Andronicus named it, is the collection of Aristotle's writings on logic. It became one of the most influential books in the history of Western thought.

Aristotle's ideas on logic were studied, copied, and codified by medieval scholars. They formed an important part of the educational curriculum in Renaissance Europe. In fact, the *Organon* formed a core part of many students' education into the 20th century. But the syllogism tells us little about the current state of logic. Its importance is primarily historical: For about 2,000 years the syllogism was the principal object of study for those interested in logic. Many scholars thought that, at least in the area of logic, Aristotle had done all that could be done. They believed that in the area of logic no new discoveries were possible.

There is no doubt that Aristotle made an important contribution to understanding logic, because his was the first contribution. In retrospect, however, Aristotle's insights were very limited. Logic is more than the syllogism, because language is more than a set of syllogisms. Logic and language are closely related. We can express ourselves logically in a variety of ways, and not every set of logical statements can be reduced to a collection of syllogisms. Aristotle had found a way of expressing certain logical arguments, but his insights are too simple to be generally useful.

## George Boole and the Laws of Thought

The 20th-century British philosopher and mathematician Bertrand Russell wrote that modern, "pure" mathematics began with the work of the British mathematician George Boole (1815–64). Not everyone agrees with Russell's assessment, but there can be little doubt that Boole, a highly original thinker, contributed many insights that have proved to be extremely important in ways both theoretical and practical. The following famous quotation, taken



from his article “Mathematical Analysis of Logic,” strikes many contemporary readers as radical in that he insists that mathematics is about nothing more than relationships among symbols:

They who are acquainted with the present state of the theory of Symbolical Algebra, are aware, that the validity of the processes of analysis does not depend upon the interpretation of the symbols which are employed, but solely upon the laws of their combination. Every system of interpretation which does not affect the truth of the relations supposed, is equally admissible, and it is thus that the same process may, under one scheme of interpretation, represent the solution of a question on the properties of numbers, under another, that of a geometrical problem, and under a third, that of a problem of dynamics or optics. This principle is indeed of fundamental importance; and it may with safety be affirmed, that the recent advances of pure analysis have been much assisted by the influence which it has exerted in directing the current of investigation.

*(Boole, George. Mathematical Analysis of Logic: being  
an essay towards a calculus of deductive reasoning.  
Oxford: B. Blackwell, 1965)*

Despite Boole’s assertion that mathematics is about nothing more than symbolic relationships, Boole’s insights have since found important applications, especially in the area of computer chip design.

Boole was born into a poor family. His father was a cobbler, who was interested in science, mathematics, and languages. His interest in these subjects was purely intellectual. He enjoyed learning, and he put his discoveries to use by designing and then creating various optical instruments; telescopes, microscopes, and cameras were all produced in the elder Boole’s workshop. As a youth George Boole helped his father in the workshop, and it was from these experiences presumably that he developed an interest in the science of optics, a subject about which he wrote as an adult.

Despite their poverty, the Booles sent their son to various schools. These schools were not especially distinguished, but he

learned a great deal from his father, and he supplemented all of this with a lot of independent study. He read about history and science; he enjoyed biographies, poetry, and fiction; and as many of the mathematicians described in this history did, Boole displayed an unusual facility with languages. While a teenager, and despite a good deal of adversity, he learned Latin, Greek, French, Italian, and German. His interest in learning languages began early. At the age of 14 he translated a poem from Latin to English and had the result published in a local newspaper. The publication of the translation set off a minor controversy when one reader



*George Boole, founder of Boolean algebra. When he first proposed his ideas they were interesting but not especially practical, but 80 years later they were essential to the development of the computer. (MAA Mathematical Sciences Digital Library)*

wrote to the newspaper to question whether anyone so young could have produced such a skillful translation. Boole was clearly an outstanding student, but his formal education was cut short.

In 1831 when Boole was 16, his father's business became bankrupt. The penalties for bankruptcy were more serious then than they are now, and George Boole left school to help his family. He got a job, first as an assistant teacher, and later as a teacher. It was at this time that he began to concentrate his energy on learning mathematics. He later explained that he turned toward mathematics because at the time he could not afford to buy many books, and mathematics books, which required more time to be read, offered better value. Throughout this period of independent study Boole went through several teaching jobs. At the age of 20 when he had saved enough money, he opened his own boarding school in his hometown of Lincoln.

It is a tribute to his intellectual ambition and his love of mathematics that despite moving from job to job and later establishing and operating his own school, Boole found enough time to learn higher mathematics and to publish his ideas. He also began to make contacts with university professors so that he could discuss mathematics with other experts. Eventually Boole was awarded the Royal Society of London's first Gold Medal for one of his mathematics papers.

Boole never did attend college. His formal education ended permanently when he left school at the age of 16. Not everyone has the drive to overcome this kind of educational isolation, but it seemed to suit Boole. Boole's language skills enabled him to read important mathematical works in their original languages. He developed unique insights in both mathematics and philosophy. Soon Boole turned away from the type of mathematics that would have been familiar to every mathematician of Boole's time and directed his energy toward discovering what he called the "laws of thought."

Boole's inquiry into the laws of thought is a mathematical and philosophical analysis of formal logic, often called symbolic logic, logic, or, sometimes, logistic. The field of logic deals with the principles of reasoning. It contains Aristotle's syllogisms as a very special case, but Boole's inquiry extended far beyond anything that Aristotle envisioned. Having developed what was essentially a new branch of mathematics, Boole longed for more time to explore these ideas further. His duties at his own school as well as other duties at other local schools were enough to keep him very busy but not very well off. When Queen's College (now University College) was established in Cork, Ireland, Boole applied for a teaching position at the new institution. Between the time that he applied and the time that he was hired, three years passed. He had despaired of ever being offered the position, but in 1849 when he finally was, he accepted it and made the most of it.

Boole remained at Queen's College for the rest of his life. He married, and by all accounts he was extremely devoted to his wife. He was apparently regarded with both affection and curiosity by his neighbors: When Boole met anyone who piqued his curiosity, he immediately invited that person to his home for supper and

conversation. He is often described as someone who was kind, generous, and extremely inquisitive. Boole died after a brief illness at the age of 49.

## Boolean Algebra

Boole's great contribution to mathematics is symbolic logic. Boole sought a way of applying algebra to express and greatly extend classical logic. Recall that Aristotle's syllogisms were a way of making explicit certain simple logical relations between classes of objects. Boole's symbolic logic can do the same thing, but his concept of logic greatly extended Aristotle's ideas by using certain logical *operators* to explore and express the relations between various classes. His approach to logic depended on three "simple" operators, which we (for now) denote by AND, OR, and NOR. Over the intervening years, mathematicians have found it convenient to modify some of Boole's own ideas about these operators, but initially we restrict our attention to Boole's definitions. For purposes of this exposition it is sufficient to restrict our attention to careful definitions of the operators AND and OR.

*Definition of AND:* Given two classes, which we call  $x$  and  $y$ , the expression  $x\text{AND}y$  denotes the set of all elements that are common to both the classes  $x$  and  $y$ . For example, if  $x$  represents the class of all cars and  $y$  represents the set of all objects that are red, then  $x\text{AND}y$  represents the class of all red cars. This notation is hardly satisfactory, however, because Boole was interested in developing an *algebra* of thought. As a consequence Boole represented what we have written as  $x\text{AND}y$  as the "logical product" of  $x$  and  $y$ , namely,  $xy$ . This leads to the first unique aspect of Boole's algebra. Because the set of all elements common to the class  $x$  is the class  $x$  itself—that is,  $x\text{AND}x$  is  $x$ —Boole's algebra has the property that  $xx = x$  or, using exponents to express this idea,  $x^2 = x$ . By repeating this argument multiple times we arrive at the statement  $x^n = x$ , where  $n$  represents any natural number. This equation does not hold true in the algebra that we first learn in junior and senior high school, but that does not make it wrong. It is, in fact, one of the defining properties of Boolean algebra. Finally, notice that

with this definition of a logical product, the following statement is true:  $xy = yx$ . That is, the elements that belong to the class  $x\text{AND}y$  are identical to the elements that belong to the class  $y\text{AND}x$ .

*Definition of OR:* Boole's definition of the operator OR is different from that used in Boolean algebra today, but it coincides with one common usage of the word *or*. To appreciate Boole's definition of the operator OR, imagine that we are traveling through the country and arrive at a fork in the road. We have a decision to make: We can turn left or we can turn right. We cannot, however, simultaneously turn both left and right. In this sense, the word *or* is used in a way that is exclusive. We can take one action or the other but not both. Boole defined the OR operator in this exclusive sense. Given two classes, which we call  $x$  and  $y$ , the expression  $x\text{OR}y$  means the set of elements that are in  $x$  but not in  $y$  together with the set of elements that are in  $y$  but not in  $x$ . In particular, the class  $x\text{OR}y$  does not contain any elements that are in both  $x$  and  $y$ . If we again let  $x$  represent the class of all cars, and  $y$  represent the class of all objects that are red, then the class  $x\text{OR}y$  contains all cars that are not red and every object that is red provided it is not a car. As we have written  $x\text{OR}y$ , Boole used the expression  $x + y$ . Notice that with this interpretation of the symbol  $+$  it is still true that  $x + y = y + x$ . (We emphasize that Boole's definition of the OR operator is different from the definition in common use today. See the section Refining and Extending Boolean Algebra later in this chapter for a discussion of the difference.)

The axioms for Boole's algebra can now be expressed as follows. A Boolean algebra is, according to Boole, any theory that satisfies the following three equations:

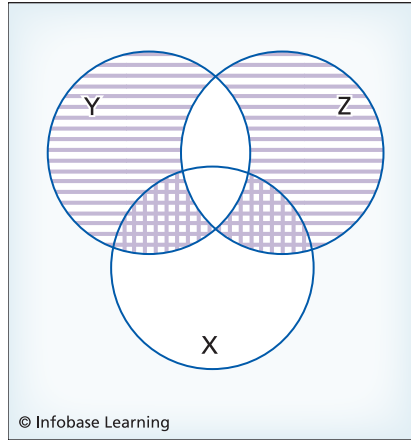
1.  $xy = yx$
2.  $x(y + z) = xy + xz$
3.  $x^n = x$ , where  $n$  is any natural number

The first and third axioms have already been discussed. The meaning of the second axiom can best be explained via a Venn diagram (see the accompanying illustration).

The roles of the numbers 0 and 1 are especially important in Boole's algebra. The number 0 represents the empty set. If, for example,  $x$  represents the set of diamonds and  $y$  represents the set of emeralds, then  $xy$ , the set of objects that are both diamonds and emeralds, is empty—that is, with this interpretation of  $x$  and  $y$ ,  $xy = 0$ . For Boole, the number 1 represents the *universe* under consideration, that is, the entire class of objects being considered. If we continue to let  $x$  represent the set of diamonds and  $y$  the set of emeralds, and if, in addition, we let 1 represent the set of all gemstones then we obtain the following three additional equations: (1)  $1x = x$ , (2)  $1y = y$ , and (3)  $x(1 - y) = x$ , where the

expression  $(1 - y)$  represents all the objects in the universal set that are not emeralds, so that the class of diamonds AND the class of gems that are not emeralds is simply the class of diamonds.

Recall that in the excerpt from Boole quoted at the beginning of this chapter, he explicitly states, “. . . the validity of the processes of analysis does not depend upon the interpretation of the symbols which are employed.” Having established the basic properties of his algebra, he is free to interpret the symbols in any manner convenient. This is important because there was another interpretation that Boole had in mind, and this interpretation has since become very important as well. To appreciate Boole's second interpretation, we imagine some proposition, which we call  $X$ , and we let the letter  $x$  represent the times when proposition  $X$  is



*Venn diagram demonstrating that in Boolean algebra  $x(y + z) = xy + xz$ . Note that  $y + z$  is the horizontally shaded area, and  $x(y + z)$  is the intersection of the horizontally shaded area with  $x$ . Alternatively,  $xy$  is the area common to the disc  $x$  and the disc  $y$ ,  $xz$  is the area common to the disc  $x$  and the disc  $z$ , and  $xy + xz$  is the union of  $xy$  and  $xz$  minus their common area. Therefore,  $x(y + z) = xy + xz$ .*

true. Because a proposition is either true or false—it cannot be both true and false—the expression  $1 - x$  must represent those times when  $X$  is false. For example, suppose we let  $X$  represent the statement “It is raining.” Because we let  $x$  represent the times when statement  $X$  is true,  $x$  represents those times when it actually is raining. The expression  $1 - x$  holds when the statement  $X$  is false: That is,  $1 - x$  represents those times when it is not raining.

In a similar way we can interpret the logical product and the logical sum. If we have two propositions—we represent them with  $X$  and  $Y$ —then we can let the letter  $x$  represent those times when proposition  $X$  is true and  $y$  represent those times when proposition  $Y$  is true. The logical product  $xy$  now represents those times when propositions  $X$  and  $Y$  are *simultaneously* true. For example, let  $X$  represent the proposition “It is raining” and let  $Y$  represent the statement “It is windy.” The expression  $xy$  represents those times when it is simultaneously rainy and windy.

In a similar way, the logical sum  $x + y$  represents those times when, according to Boole, either proposition  $X$  is true or proposition  $Y$  is true, but *not* when they are simultaneously true. In our weather example,  $x + y$  represents those times when it is either windy or rainy but not both.

Keep in mind that this in no way changes Boole’s algebra. According to Boole, mathematics is only about the relationships among symbols, so from a mathematical perspective the interpretation

that we place on the symbols is irrelevant. From the point of view of applications, however, the interpretation that we place on the symbols means everything, because it determines how we *use* the algebra. Boole’s alternative interpretation of his algebraic symbols as representing true and false values has important applications. It enables one to calculate the true or false values associated

AND	T	F
T	T	F
F	F	F

© Infobase Learning

*Truth table for the operation AND*

## ARISTOTLE AND BOOLE

For more than 2,000 years Aristotle's treatment of logic was not modified in any significant way. For Western scholars Aristotle's logic was the only type of logic. When propositions are written in ordinary language, understanding why they arrived at this conclusion is not difficult. Written rhetorically, Aristotle's syllogisms have no obvious generalizations. This changed entirely with the work of Boole. Boole's insights enabled him to show that Aristotle's conception was not only limited but also easily extended. Once Aristotle's treatment of the syllogism was expressed by using Boole's algebra, it was seen to be a particularly simple set of computations, and Aristotle's insights were seen to be a very small part of a much larger algebraic landscape.

In the following we list Aristotle's four categorical propositions. Each proposition is followed, in parentheses, by the same expression using Boole's algebra. Following Boole, we use the letter  $v$  to represent a nonempty class of objects:

- All  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's. ( $xy = x$ )
- Some  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's. ( $v = xy$ )
- No  $x$ 's are  $y$ 's. ( $xy = 0$ )
- Some  $x$ 's are not  $y$ 's. ( $v = x(1 - y)$ )

Notice that each proposition has been expressed as a simple algebraic equation.

Using Boole's algebra, we can express any syllogism via a set of algebraic equations. To illustrate, we rewrite the syllogism given near the beginning of this chapter involving mammals, dogs, and poodles. This requires three equations. Each line of the syllogism is written in words followed, in parentheses, by an algebraic equation that expresses the same idea. We let the letters  $m$ ,  $d$ , and  $p$  represent mammals, dogs, and poodles, respectively.

- Premise 1: All dogs are mammals. ( $dm = d$ )
- Premise 2: All poodles are dogs. ( $pd = p$ )
- All poodles are mammals. ( $pm = p$ )

Notice that if we multiply the first equation by  $p$  we get  $pdm = pd$ , but  $pd$  equals  $p$  by the second equation. All that remains for us to do is write  $p$  in place of  $pd$  on the left and right in the equation  $pdm = pd$ . This yields the conclusion of the syllogism, namely,  $pm = p$ . This example shows how a syllogism can be reduced to an algebraic computation.



with a question or even a chain of equations. Engineers use these ideas to design logic circuits for computers.

Boole's applications of his algebra centered on the theory of probability and the philosophy of mind. Both applications are of a philosophical nature, and they are not well remembered now, principally because Boole's work in these two areas, although intellectually interesting, did not uncover much that was new even at the time. The principal application of Boolean algebra, which involves the design of computer hardware and software, would not be discovered until the 20th century.

### Refining and Extending Boolean Algebra

Boole's conception was an important step forward, but it contained some logical problems of its own. The first difficulty was identified and corrected by the British logician and economist William Stanley Jevons (1835–82). The difficulty arises in the course of computations.

In mathematics—especially pure mathematics—the method by which we arrive at a solution is at least as important as the solution itself. When solving a math problem, any sequence of steps should have the property that *each step can be logically justified*. To express the same idea in a different way: There should be a mathematical reason for every step in the solution. This was not the case in Boole's own version of Boolean algebra, and much of the difficulty centered around Boole's definition of the OR operator.

Recall that given two classes of objects, which we call  $x$  and  $y$ , Boole defined  $x + y$  to mean that class of objects that belongs to  $x$  or to  $y$  but not to both. The problem with this definition is that as one uses Boole's algebra to solve problems, one sometimes encounters expressions such as  $x + x$ . To obtain this expression, we just substitute the letter  $x$  for the letter  $y$  in the first sentence of this paragraph. We get that  $x + x$  is *that class of objects that belongs to  $x$  or to  $x$  but not to both*. This is meaningless. Although Boole found ways to manipulate the expressions to obtain valid results, from a logical point of view his definition is not entirely satisfactory. Jevons proposed a new definition for the OR operator, and it is his definition that is in general use today.

Jevons defined the OR operator inclusively: Given two classes, which we call  $x$  and  $y$ , the expression  $xORy$  means the set consisting of all objects in  $x$  together with all objects in  $y$ . In particular, Jevons defined OR so that if an object is both in  $x$  and in  $y$  it also belongs to  $xORy$ . An object fails to belong to  $xORy$  only when it fails to belong to  $x$ , *and* it fails to belong to  $y$ . The main advantage of Jevons's definition is that it allows us to attach a reasonable definition to the expression  $x + x$ : The set of objects belonging to the class  $xORx$  equals the class  $x$  itself. Admittedly this sounds stilted, but it allows us to attach a meaning to the expression  $x + x$  that is logically satisfactory. In particular, this definition enables us to write the equation  $x + x = x$ . This is a different sort of equation than the one we encounter in our first algebra courses, but it parallels Boole's own equation for logical multiplication, namely,  $x^2 = x$ . This new definition of the OR operator straightened out many of the logical difficulties that had arisen in computing with Boole's algebra.

Notice, too, that in the equations  $x + x = x$  and  $x^2 = x$  the only coefficient to occur is 1. Furthermore if we search for roots of the equation  $x^2 - x = 0$ , we find that the only roots are the numbers 0 and 1. In other words, these equations enable us to restrict our attention to just two numbers.

The latter half of the 19th century saw several further extensions and refinements of Boole's algebra, but Boole's central concepts remained valid. Of special interest was the work of the German mathematician Ernst Schröder (1841–1902), who developed a complete set of axioms for Boolean algebra. (Boole's axioms, listed previously, were incomplete.)

Axioms are a "bare bones" description of a mathematical system in the sense that everything that can be learned about a mathematical system,

OR	T	F
T	T	T
F	T	F

© Infobase Learning

*Truth table for the modern version of the operation OR*

whether that system is, for example, Boolean algebra or Euclidean geometry, is a logical consequence of the axioms. In this sense mathematicians concern themselves with revealing facts that are, logically speaking, right before their eyes. The axioms always contain all of the information that one can learn about a system. The problem is that the information is not displayed in an obvious way. Any nonobvious statement that can be deduced from a set of axioms is called a theorem. Most mathematicians occupy themselves with deducing new theorems from theorems that have already been proved; this is the art of mathematical discovery. Unfortunately knowing that statement B is, for example, a logical consequence of statement A gives no insight into whether or not statement A is true.

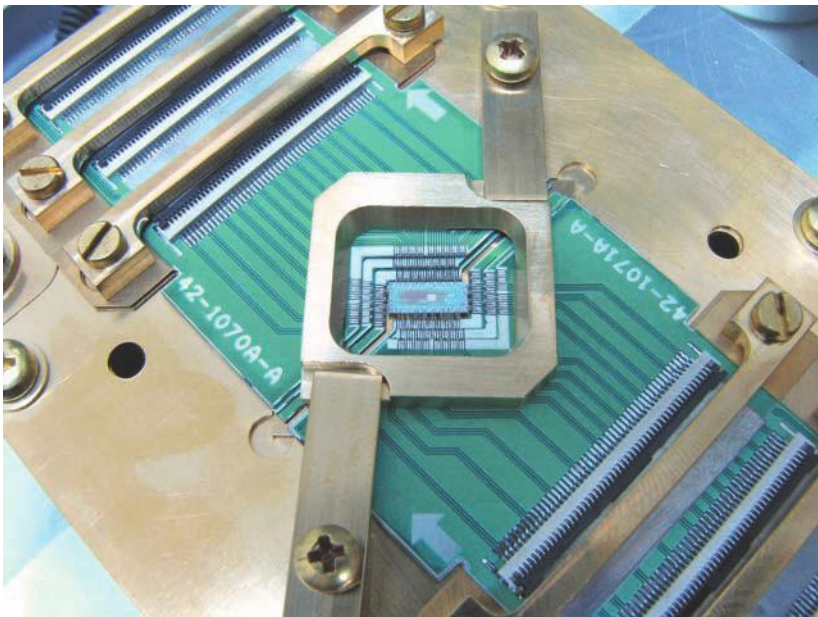
Fortunately there is a final reason why any theorem is true. The ultimate reason that each theorem in a mathematical system is true is that it can be deduced as a logical consequence of the axioms that define the system. The axioms *are* the subject. It is no exaggeration that, mathematically speaking, one can never be completely sure of anything until a set of axioms that define the subject has been stated. Finally, a logically consistent set of axioms for any branch of mathematics is important because it ensures that it is possible to develop the mathematics in such a way that no statement can be proved both true and false. Placing Boole's algebra on a firmer logical foundation was Schröder's contribution.

In the sense that he axiomatized Boolean algebra, Schröder completed the subject: He put Boolean algebra into the logical form that we know today. Of course, many new theorems have been proved in the intervening century or so since Schröder's death, but the theorems were proved in the context of Schröder's axioms. Logicians, philosophers, and a few mathematicians were quick to recognize the value of Boole's insights. His ideas provided a conceptual foundation that enabled the user to examine more closely the relationships that exist between logic and mathematics. Many mathematicians, inspired by Boole's work, went on to do just that. This is one implication of Boole's discoveries, but Boolean algebra has had a more immediate impact on our lives through its use in the design of computer circuitry.

## Boolean Algebra and Computers

Boole knew nothing about computers, of course. He died 15 years before the invention of the lightbulb, and the first electronic digital computer began operation in 1946—more than 80 years after his death. Nevertheless the design of computer chips is one of the most important applications of Boolean algebra. Boolean expressions produce one of the values, which we can call true and false or zero and one. Two digits are all that are necessary to express ideas in binary code. (*Binary code* is a way of coding information that depends on precisely two symbols, which, for convenience, are often represented by the digits 0 and 1.)

To appreciate how this works, we can imagine a computer that performs three functions. First, the computer reads an input file consisting of a string of binary digits. (The input file is the information that the computer has been programmed to process.) Second, the computer processes, or alters, the input file in accordance with some preprogrammed set of instructions. Third, the



*Computer chips represent Boolean algebra in silicon.* (Georgia Tech)

computer displays the results of these manipulations. This is the output file, which we can imagine as consisting of binary code as well. (Of course, the binary output is usually rewritten in a more user-friendly format, but the details of this reformatting process do not concern us here.) The output file is the reason we buy the computer. It represents the answer, the work performed by the machine on the input file.

The middle step, the processing part of this sequence, is the step in which we are interested. The processing takes place via a set of electronic circuits. By an *electronic circuit* we mean any structure through which electricity can flow. Circuits are manufactured in a variety of sizes and can be made of a variety of materials. What is important is that each circuit is capable of modifying or regulating the flow of electrical current in certain very specific ways. The actual control function of a circuit is affected through a set of switches or *gates*. The gates themselves are easily described in terms of Boolean operators.

There are several types of gates. They either correspond to or can be described in terms of the three common Boolean operators, the AND, OR, and NOT operators. (The NOT operator reverses the value of the variable. The value of NOT-true is false, for example, and the value of NOT $x$  is  $(1-x)$  as discussed in the section *Boolean Algebra*.) The names of the gates are even derived from Boolean algebra: There are AND-gates, OR-gates, and NOT-gates. By combining Boolean operators we also obtain two other common types of gates: NAND-gates and NOR-gates. Each type of gate regulates the flow of electric current subject to certain conditions.

The idea is that there is a very low-level current flowing through each circuit. This current is constant and has no effect on whether the gate is “open” or “closed.” When, however, the voltage of the input current rises above a certain prespecified level, the gate is activated. The level of voltage required to activate the gate is called the threshold voltage.

To see how Boolean algebra comes into play, we describe the AND-gate and the OR-gate. An AND-gate has two inputs, just as the Boolean operator AND has two arguments or independent variables. In the case of the AND-gate, we can let  $x$  represent the

voltage at one input and  $y$  represent the voltage at the other input. When the voltage  $x$  and the voltage  $y$  *simultaneously* exceed the threshold voltage, the AND-gate allows current to pass from one side to the other. If, however, the voltage in either or both of the inputs falls below the threshold voltage, current does not pass to the other side of the gate. It is in this sense that the AND-gate is a physical representation of Boole's own AND operator. Instead of classes of objects, or binary digits, however, the AND-gate operates on electric current.

Similarly the OR-gate is designed to be inclusive, just as the more modern version of the Boolean operator OR is defined inclusively: If either  $x$  or  $y$  is true, then  $x\text{OR}y$  is also true. The OR-gate operates on two inputs. We can represent the voltage in one input with the letter  $x$  and the voltage in the second input with the letter  $y$ . If either  $x$  or  $y$  is at or above the threshold voltage then the OR-gate allows the current to pass. Otherwise, the current does not pass.

The five gates—the AND-, OR-, NOT-, NOR-, and NAND-gates—modify input in the form of electric currents to produce a new pattern of electrical currents as output. One can interpret the changes in current pattern—or what is the same thing, the state of the gates—as information, but this is an additional interpretation that is placed on the configuration of circuits. There could be no better physical representation of Boolean algebra than the logic circuits of a computer.

George Boole's exposition of Boolean algebra is contained in a pamphlet, "Mathematical Analysis of Logic" (1847), and a book, *An Investigation into the Laws of Thought on Which Are Founded the Mathematical Theories of Logic and Probabilities* (1854). In these works we find not just a new branch of mathematics, but also a new way of thinking about mathematics. Boole's approach was deliberately more abstract than that of his predecessors. This highly abstract approach, far from making his algebra useless, made his algebra one of the most useful of all mathematical innovations. The most important practical applications of Boole's philosophical and mathematical investigations would not be apparent, however, until about a century after "Mathematical Analysis of Logic" was published.

# 8

## THE THEORY OF MATRICES AND DETERMINANTS

Many new types of algebraic structures have been defined and studied since the time of Galois. Today, in addition to groups and fields, mathematicians study algebraic structures called rings, semigroups, and algebras to name a few. (Here *algebra* refers to a particular type of mathematical object.) Each structure is composed of one or more sets of objects on which one or more operations are defined. The *operations* are rules for combining objects in the sets. The sets and operations together form a *structure*, and it is the goal of the mathematician to discover as much as possible about the logical relationships that exist among different parts of the structure.

In this modern approach to algebra the nature of the objects in the set is usually not specified. The objects are represented by letters. The letters may represent numbers, polynomials, or something else entirely, but usually no interpretation is placed on the letters at all. It is only the relationships that exist *among* objects and sets of objects—not the objects and sets themselves—that are of interest to the mathematician.

One of the first and most important of these “new” mathematical structures to receive the attention of mathematicians was the algebra of matrices. Matrices are tables of numbers or symbols. They combine according to some of the same rules that numbers obey, but some of the relationships that exist between matrices are different from the analogous relationships between numbers.

An important part of the theory of matrices is the theory of determinants. Today a determinant is often described as a function



of a matrix. For example, if the elements in the matrix are numbers, then—provided the matrix has as many rows as columns—we can, in theory, use those elements to compute a number called the determinant. The determinant reveals a great deal of useful information about the (square) matrix. If a matrix represents a system of equations, for example, then the determinant can tell us whether or not there exists a single solution to the system. In theory we can even use determinants to compute solutions to systems of equations (although, as we will soon see, the work involved in doing so is usually enormous—too much work to make it a practical approach to problem solving).

The theory of matrices and determinants has proved to be one of the most useful of all branches of mathematics. Not only is the theory an important tool in the solution of many problems within the field of mathematics, it is also one of the most useful in science and engineering. One reason is that this is the type of mathematics that one must know in order to solve systems of linear equations. (A *linear equation* is an equation in which every term is either the product of a number and a variable of the first power or simply a number. For example,  $x + y = 1$  is a linear equation, but  $x^2 + y = 1$  is not because the  $x$  term is raised to the second power.)

Most of us are introduced to systems of linear equations while we are still in junior or senior high school. These are “small” systems, usually involving two or three independent variables. We begin with small systems because the amount of work involved in solving systems of linear equations increases rapidly as the number of variables increases. Unfortunately these small systems fail to convey the tremendous scope of the subject. Today many mathematicians, scientists, and engineers are engaged in solving systems of equations involving many thousands of independent variables. The rush to develop computer algorithms that quickly and accurately solve ever-larger systems of equations has attracted the attention of many mathematicians around the world. The history of matrices, determinants, and related parts of mathematics, however, begins long before the advent of the computer.



## Early Ideas

Today when determinants and matrices are taught, matrices are introduced first, and determinants are described as functions of matrices. But historically determinants were discovered almost 200 years before mathematicians began to study matrices.

The Japanese mathematician Seki Kōwa, also known as Takakazu (1642–1708), was the first person to discover the idea of a determinant and investigate some of the mathematics associated with this concept. Seki was born into a samurai warrior family, but at an early age he was adopted by a family of the ruling class. When Seki was age nine a family servant who knew mathematics introduced him to the subject. He demonstrated mathematical talent almost immediately, and later in life Seki became known as the Arithmetical Sage. Today he is often described as the founder of Japanese mathematics. This is something of an exaggeration. There was mathematics in Japan before Seki. Nevertheless he was certainly an important person in the history of Japanese mathematics.

The Arithmetical Sage published very little work during his life. In fact, as was the custom in Japan at the time, he disclosed much of his work to only a select few. As a consequence much of what we know about his discoveries is secondhand or third-hand. Some scholars attribute a great many accomplishments to him: an (unproved) version of the fundamental theorem of algebra, discoveries in the field of calculus, complex algorithms for discovering solutions to algebraic equations, and more. Other scholars attribute quite a bit less. It is certain, however, that Seki discovered determinants, because his writings on this subject are well known.

Seki's ideas on determinants are fairly complex, and he used them in ways that would be difficult to describe here. A simpler approach to determinants was discovered independently in Europe about 10 years after Seki made his initial discovery. The German mathematician and philosopher Gottfried Leibniz (1646–1716) was the second person to discover what we now call determinants.

Leibniz was one of the more important figures in the history of mathematics. He is one of two creators of the calculus, and he made a number of important discoveries in other areas of mathematics. He discovered, for example, the base 2 number system.

With respect to determinants, Leibniz indicated that he was sometimes required to solve a set of three linear equations involving two variables. Such a system may or may not have a solution. Leibniz discovered that the determinant could be used to establish a criterion for the existence or nonexistence of a solution.

In modern notation we might represent a system of three equations in two unknowns as follows:

$$a_{11} + a_{12}x + a_{13}y = 0$$

$$a_{21} + a_{22}x + a_{23}y = 0$$

$$a_{31} + a_{32}x + a_{33}y = 0$$

The letters  $a_{ij}$  represent numbers called coefficients. All the coefficients on the left side of the column of “equals” signs can be viewed as part of a table. In that case the first index—the  $i$ -index—indicates the row in which the number appears, and the second index—the  $j$ -index—indicates the column. (The coefficient  $a_{12}$ , for example, belongs to the first row and the second column.) Notice that the first column contains no variables.

Leibniz’s system of equations contains more equations—there are three of them—than there are variables; there are only two variables. When the number of equations exceeds the number of variables, the possibility exists that there are simply too many constraints on the variables and that no values for  $x$  and  $y$  can simultaneously satisfy all the equations. Mathematicians today call such a system—a system for which there are no solutions—overdetermined. But even when there are more equations than there are variables, it is still possible that solutions exist. What Leibniz discovered is a criterion for determining whether such a system of equations is overdetermined. His criterion is very general, and it does not involve computing the solutions to the equations themselves. Instead it places a constraint on the numbers in the table of coefficients. The key is using the  $a_{ij}$  to compute a number that we now call the determinant. Leibniz wrote that when the determinant of this type of system is 0, a solution exists. When the determinant is not 0, there are no values of  $x$  and  $y$  that can simultaneously satisfy all three equations. In addition Leibniz

understood how to use determinants to calculate the values of the variables that would satisfy the system of equations.

Leibniz had made an important discovery: He had found a way to investigate the existence of solutions for an entire class of problems. He did this with a new type of function, the determinant, that depends only on the coefficients appearing in the equations themselves. He described his discoveries in letters to a colleague, but for whatever reason he did not publish these results for a wider audience. In fact Leibniz's ideas were not published for more than 150 years after his death. As a consequence his ideas on determinants were not widely known among the mathematicians of his time and had little impact on the development of the subject.

Mathematicians again began to look at determinants as a tool in understanding systems of equations about 50 years after Leibniz first described his discoveries. Initially these ideas were stated and proved only for small systems of variables that in modern notation might be written like this:

$$a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z = b_1$$

$$a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z = b_2$$

$$a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z = b_3$$

The notation is similar to what Leibniz used. The differences are that (1) here there are three equations in three variables and (2) the  $b_i$  represent any numbers.

Part of the difficulty that these mathematicians had in applying their insights about determinants to larger systems of equations is that their algebraic notation was not good enough. Determinants can be difficult to describe without very good notation. The calculation of determinants—even for small systems—involves quite a bit of arithmetic, and the algebraic notation needed to describe the procedure can be very complicated as well. For example, the determinant of the system in the previous paragraph is

$$\begin{aligned} & a_{11}a_{22}a_{33} + a_{12}a_{23}a_{31} + a_{13}a_{21}a_{32} \\ & - a_{31}a_{22}a_{13} - a_{32}a_{23}a_{11} - a_{33}a_{21}a_{12} \end{aligned}$$

(The general formula for computing determinants of square matrices of any size is too complicated to describe here. It can, however, be found in any textbook on linear algebra.)

Notice that for a general system of three equations in three unknowns the formula for the  $3 \times 3$  matrix given in the preceding paragraph involves 17 arithmetic operations, that is, 17 additions, subtractions, and multiplications. Computing the determinant of a general system of four equations and four unknowns involves several times as much work when measured by the number of arithmetic operations involved.

In 1750 the Swiss mathematician Gabriel Cramer (1704–50) published the method now known as Cramer's rule, a method for using determinants to solve any system of  $n$  linear equations in  $n$  unknowns, where  $n$  represents any positive integer greater than 1. Essentially Cramer's rule involves computing multiple determinants. Theoretically it is a very important insight into the relationships between determinants and systems of linear equations. Practically speaking Cramer's rule is of little use, because it requires far too many computations. The idea is simple enough, however. For example, in the system of equations given three paragraphs previous, the solution for each variable can be expressed as a fraction in which the numerator and the denominator are both determinants. The denominator of the fraction is the determinant of the system of equations. The numerator of the fraction is the determinant obtained from the original system of equations by replacing the column of coefficients associated with the variable of interest with the column consisting of  $(b_1, b_2, b_3)$ . In modern notation we might write the value of  $x$  as

$$x = \frac{\begin{vmatrix} b_1 & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ b_2 & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ b_3 & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix}}{\begin{vmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{vmatrix}}$$

where the vertical lines indicate the determinant of the table of numbers inside. (One consequence of this formula is that it fails when the denominator is zero. But the denominator is the determinant of the original system of equations. It can be shown that a unique solution for the system exists if and only if the denominator is not zero.) A more computational approach to expressing the value of  $x$  looks like this:

$$x = \frac{b_1 a_{22} a_{33} + a_{12} a_{23} b_3 + a_{13} b_2 a_{32} - b_3 a_{22} a_{13} - a_{32} a_{23} b_1 - a_{33} b_2 a_{12}}{a_{11} a_{22} a_{33} + a_{12} a_{23} a_{31} + a_{13} a_{21} a_{32} - a_{31} a_{22} a_{13} - a_{32} a_{23} a_{11} - a_{33} a_{21} a_{12}}$$

Writing out the solution in this way for a system of five equations with five unknowns would take up much of this page.

Putting the computation aside, it can be helpful to think of Cramer's rule as a function of coefficients. The values of the function are the solutions to the equations. In concept, Cramer's rule is similar to the quadratic formula, which enables the user to compute the solutions to equations of the form  $ax^2 + bx + c = 0$  using only the numbers  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ , the coefficients that appear in the equation. In other words, the quadratic formula allows one to identify  $x$  in terms of  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$ . Large systems of linear equations—and here we confine our attention to  $n$  linear equations in  $n$  unknowns—have many more coefficients than a quadratic equation and so the function is more complicated, but Cramer's rule enables the user to identify  $x_1, x_2, \dots, x_n$  in terms of  $a_{11}, a_{12}, a_{13}, \dots, a_{21}, a_{22}, a_{23}, \dots, a_{nm}, b_1, b_2, b_3, \dots, b_n$ .

In the years immediately following the publication of this method of solution, mathematicians expended a great deal of effort seeking easier ways to compute determinants for certain special cases as well as applications for these ideas. These ideas became increasingly important as they found their way into physics.

## Spectral Theory

New insights into the mathematics of systems of linear equations arose as mathematicians sought to apply analysis, that branch of mathematics that arose out of the discovery of calculus, to the

study of problems in physics. The three mathematicians who pointed the way to these new discoveries were all French: Jean le Rond d'Alembert (1717–83), Joseph-Louis Lagrange (1736–1813), and Pierre-Simon Laplace (1749–1827). All three mathematicians contributed to the ideas about to be described; of the three d'Alembert was the first.

Jean le Rond d'Alembert was the child of an artillery officer and a marquise. His birth mother abandoned him on the steps of the Parisian church of Saint Jean le Rond (where he got his name). He was adopted by the wife of an artisan who raised him as her own. He lived with her until her death—48 years later. When he later achieved prominence as a scientist, he spurned his biological mother's attempts to make contact with him.

D'Alembert's biological father never acknowledged his paternity, but he made sure that his son had sufficient money for a first-rate education. In college d'Alembert studied theology, medicine, and law, but he eventually settled on mathematics. Surprisingly, d'Alembert taught himself mathematics while pursuing his other studies, and except for a few private lessons he was entirely self-taught.

Soon after beginning his mathematical studies, d'Alembert distinguished himself as a mathematician, a physicist, and a personality. Never hesitant to criticize the work of others, d'Alembert lived a life marked by almost continuous controversy as well as mathematical and philosophical accomplishments. In his own day, d'Alembert was probably best known as the coeditor of the *Encyclopédie* with Denis Diderot. This was one of the great works of the Enlightenment.

With respect to systems of linear equations, d'Alembert was interested in developing and solving a set of equations that would represent the motion of a very thin, very light string along which several weights were arrayed. With one end tied to a support, the weighted string is allowed to swing back and forth. Under these conditions the motion of the string is quite irregular. Some mathematicians of the time believed that the motion was too complicated to predict. D'Alembert, however, solved the problem for small motions of the string.



*As mathematicians uncovered connections between the eigenvalues of matrices and problems in astronomy, progress was accelerated in both algebra and astronomy. (NASA-JPL)*

The analytical details of d'Alembert's solution are too complicated to describe here, but the algebra is not. Broadly speaking d'Alembert reduced his problem to what is now known as an eigenvalue problem. A general eigenvalue problem looks like this:

$$a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z = \lambda x$$

$$a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z = \lambda y$$

$$a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z = \lambda z$$

In d'Alembert's problem the unknowns, here represented by the letters  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , represented functions rather than numbers, but this distinction has no bearing on the algebra that we are interested in discussing.

This system of linear equations is different from the others we have considered in three important ways:

1. The unknowns,  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ , appear on both sides of each equation.
2. The number represented by the Greek letter  $\lambda$ , or lambda, is also an unknown. It is called an eigenvalue of the system of equations.
3. The goal of the mathematician is to find all eigenvalues as well as the solutions for  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  that are associated with each eigenvalue. Each eigenvalue determines a different set of values for  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$ .

The problem of determining the eigenvalues associated with each system of equations is important because eigenvalues often have important physical interpretations.

D'Alembert discovered that the only reasonable solutions to his equations were associated with negative eigenvalues. Solutions associated with positive eigenvalues—that is, solutions associated with values of  $\lambda$  greater than 0—were not physically realistic. A solution associated with a positive eigenvalue predicted that once the string was set in motion, the arc along which it swung would become larger and larger instead of slowly “dying down” as actually occurs. The observation that eigenvalues had interesting physical interpretations was also made by other scientists at about the same time.

Pierre-Simon Laplace and Joseph-Louis Lagrange reached similar sorts of conclusions in their study of the motion of the planets. Their research also generated systems of linear equations, where



each unknown represented a function (as opposed to a number). They studied systems of six equations in six unknowns because at the time there were only six known planets. Laplace and Lagrange discovered that solutions associated with positive eigenvalues predicted that small perturbations in planetary motion would become ever larger over time. One consequence of Laplace's and Lagrange's observation is that any solution associated with a positive eigenvalue predicted that over time the solar system would eventually fly apart. Lagrange rejected positive eigenvalues on the basis of physical reasoning: The solar system had not already flown apart. Laplace ruled out the existence of positive eigenvalues associated with his system of equations on mathematical grounds. He proved that in a system in which all the planets moved in the same direction, the eigenvalues must all be negative. He concluded that the solar system is stable—that is, that it would not fly apart over time.

Notice the similarities between the model of the solar system and the weighted string problem of d'Alembert. In each case solutions associated with positive eigenvalues were shown to be “nonphysical” in the sense that they did not occur in nature. The connection between algebraic ideas (eigenvalues) and physical ones (weighted strings and planetary orbits) spurred further research into both.

To convey the flavor of the type of algebraic insights that Lagrange and Laplace were pursuing, consider the following eigenvalue problem taken from one of the preceding paragraphs. It is reproduced here for ease of reference.

$$a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z = \lambda x$$

$$a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z = \lambda y$$

$$a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z = \lambda z$$

Notice that we can subtract away each term on the right from both sides of each equation. The result is

$$(a_{11} - \lambda)x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z = 0$$

$$a_{21}x + (a_{22} - \lambda)y + a_{23}z = 0$$

$$a_{31}x + a_{32}y + (a_{33} - \lambda)z = 0$$

This is a new set of coefficients. The coefficient in the upper left corner is now  $a_{11} - \lambda$  instead of simply  $a_{11}$ . The middle coefficient is now  $a_{22} - \lambda$  instead of  $a_{22}$ , and similarly the coefficient in the lower right corner is now  $a_{33} - \lambda$  instead of  $a_{33}$ . The other coefficients are unchanged. From this new set of coefficients a new determinant can be computed. (We can, in fact, use the formula already given for  $3 \times 3$ -matrices on page 146: Simply substitute  $a_{11} - \lambda$ ,  $a_{22} - \lambda$ ,  $a_{33} - \lambda$  for  $a_{11}$ ,  $a_{22}$ , and  $a_{33}$  in the formula.) The result is a third-degree polynomial in the variable  $\lambda$ . This polynomial is called the characteristic polynomial, and its roots are exactly the eigenvalues of the original system of linear equations.

The discovery of the characteristic polynomial established an important connection between two very important branches of algebra: the theory of determinants and the theory of algebraic equations. Laplace and Legendre had discovered the results for particular systems of equations, but there was as yet no general theory of either determinants or eigenvalues. Their work, however, pointed to complex and interesting connections among the theory of determinants, the theory of algebraic equations, and physics. This very rich interplay of different areas of mathematics and science is such a frequent feature of discovery in both fields that today we sometimes take it for granted. At the time of Laplace and Legendre, however, the existence of these interconnections was a discovery in itself.

The work of d'Alembert, Laplace, and Legendre gave a great impetus to the study of eigenvalue problems. Investigators wanted to understand the relationships that existed between the coefficients in the equations and the eigenvalues. The result of these inquiries was the beginning of a branch of mathematics called spectral theory—the eigenvalues are sometimes called the spectral values of the system—and the pioneer in the theoretical study of these types of questions was the French mathematician Augustin-Louis Cauchy (1789–1857).

Cauchy was born at a time when France was politically unstable. This instability profoundly affected both his personal and his professional life. First the French Revolution of 1789 occurred. While Cauchy was still a boy, the revolution was supplanted by

a period called the Reign of Terror (1793–94), a period when approximately 17,000 French citizens were executed and many more were imprisoned. In search of safety, Cauchy's family fled Paris, the city of his birth, to a village called Arcueil. It was in Arcueil that Cauchy first met Laplace. Lagrange and Laplace were friends of Cauchy's father, and Lagrange advised the elder Cauchy that his son could best prepare himself for mathematics by studying languages. Dutifully Cauchy studied languages for two years before beginning his study of mathematics.

By the age of 21, Cauchy was working as a military engineer—at this time Napoléon was leading wars against his European neighbors—and pursuing research in mathematics in his spare time. Cauchy wanted to work in an academic environment, but this goal proved difficult for him. He was passed over for appointments by several colleges and worked briefly at others. He eventually secured a position at the Académie des Sciences in 1816. There he replaced the distinguished professor of geometry Gaspard Monge, who lost the position for political reasons.

In July of 1830 there was another revolution in France. This time King Charles X was replaced by Louis-Philippe. As a condition of employment Cauchy was required to swear an oath of allegiance to the new king, but this he refused to do. The result was that he lost the academic post that had meant so much to him. Cauchy found a position in Turin, Italy, and later in Prague in what is now the Czech Republic. By 1838 he was able to return to his old position in Paris as a researcher but not as a teacher: The requirement of the oath was still in effect, and Cauchy still refused to swear his allegiance. It was not until 1848, when Louis-Philippe was overthrown, that Cauchy, who never did swear allegiance, was able to teach again.

All biographies of Cauchy indicate that he was a difficult man, brusque and preachy. This is another reason that he often did not obtain academic appointments that he very much desired. This pattern proved a source of frustration throughout his life. Even toward the end of his career, after producing one of the largest and most creative bodies of work in the history of mathematics, he still failed to gain an appointment that he sought at the Collège de France.

Today there are theorems and problems in many branches of mathematics that bear Cauchy's name. His ideas are fundamental to the fields of analysis, group theory, and geometry as well as spectral theory. After his death his papers were collected and published. They fill 27 volumes.

One of Cauchy's earliest papers was about the theory of determinants. He revisited the problems associated with determinants and eigenvalues several times during his life, each time adding something different. We concentrate on two of his contributions, which we sometimes express in a more modern and convenient notation than Cauchy used.

Cauchy wrote determinants as tables of numbers. For example, he would write the determinant of the system of linear equations

$$\begin{aligned}a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z &= b_1 \\a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z &= b_2 \\a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z &= b_3\end{aligned}$$

as the table of numbers

$$\begin{array}{ccc}a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33}\end{array}$$

The coefficients  $a_{11}$ ,  $a_{22}$ ,  $a_{33}$  lie along what is called the main diagonal. Cauchy proved that when all the numbers in the table are real and when the table itself is symmetric with respect to the main diagonal—so that, for example,  $a_{12} = a_{21}$ —the eigenvalues, or roots of the characteristic equation, are real numbers. This was the first such observation relating the eigenvalues of the equations to the structure of the table of numbers from which the determinant is calculated. Part of the value of this observation is that it enables the user to describe various properties of the eigenvalues without actually computing them. (As a practical matter, computing eigenvalues for large systems of equations involves a great deal of work.)

Cauchy also discovered a kind of “determinant arithmetic.” In modern language he discovered that when two matrices are multiplied together in a certain way—see the sidebar *Matrix Multiplication*—the determinant of the product matrix is the product of the determinants of the two matrices. In other words, if  $A$  and  $B$  are two square arrays of numbers, then  $\det(A \times B) = \det(A) \times \det(B)$ , where  $\det(A)$  is shorthand for “the determinant of  $A$ .” These theorems are important because they hint at the existence of a deeper logical structure.

To better appreciate what “deeper logical structure” means, it helps to think about Euclidean geometry and what it means to study Euclidean geometry. What do students study when they study Euclidean geometry? A part of Euclidean geometry is devoted, for example, to the study of triangles, but not every property of a triangle is geometric. Euclidean geometry is not concerned, for example, with how far from the edge of a blackboard or computer screen the triangle appears; nor does it matter how the triangle is tilted. These properties are not geometric. Instead, Euclidean geometry is concerned solely with those properties of a triangle that do not change when, for example, the triangle is rotated or translated. (A translation means that the triangle is moved so that its sides remain parallel to their original orientation.) These motions are called Euclidean motions (or Euclidean transformations), and so one can characterize Euclidean geometry as the study of those properties of figures that are invariant under the set of all Euclidean motions. Lengths are preserved under translations and rotations, for example, and so are the measures of angles. These properties of the triangle are, therefore, geometric in Euclidean geometry. In non-Euclidean geometries these properties may not be geometric.

In a similar sort of way, Cauchy had begun to identify properties of matrices and determinants that are invariant when the matrices undergo certain kinds of transformations. This idea is important because it is often the case that two algebraic descriptions of the same object look different but are in some sense the same. An equation, for example, can be imagined as a kind of description. It describes a set of numbers—the set of numbers that satisfy

the equation. The equation is not invariant under multiplication because multiplication of each term by any number (different from zero or one) will change every term in the equation. The solutions, however, are invariant under multiplication, because multiplying both sides of the equation by any nonzero number will leave the solution set unchanged. Invariant properties are fundamental properties, and Cauchy had begun the process of enumerating those properties of matrices, their determinants, and their associated characteristic polynomials that are invariant when the coefficients of the matrices are transformed in certain ways. To describe the specifics of these transformations would take us too far afield, but identifying the transformations and the properties that they leave unchanged is always a major step forward in any program of algebraic research—then as now. The mathematician studies exactly those properties of a system that are invariant under a specified class of transformations. Cauchy's insights into these matters form an important part of the foundations of spectral theory.

## The Theory of Matrices

Credit for founding the theory of matrices is often given to the English mathematician Arthur Cayley (1821–95) and his close friend the English mathematician James Joseph Sylvester (1814–97), but others had essentially the same ideas at roughly the same time. The German mathematicians Ferdinand Georg Frobenius (1849–1917) and Ferdinand Gotthold Max Eisenstein (1823–52) and the French mathematician Charles Hermite (1822–1901) are three mathematicians who also made discoveries similar to those of Cayley and Sylvester. Eisenstein, in fact, seems to have been the first to think of developing an algebra of matrices. He had been studying systems of linear equations of the form

$$a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z = b_1$$

$$a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z = b_2$$

$$a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z = b_3$$

and began to consider the possibility of analyzing the mathematical properties of what is essentially the “skeleton” of the equation, the table of coefficients that today we would write as

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}$$

Although this idea may seem similar to that of Cauchy’s tables of coefficients, it is not. It is true that Cauchy used tables of numbers, but he used them as an alternate way of representing the determinant function. Eisenstein contemplated the possibility of developing an algebra in which the objects of interest were not numbers, or the determinant function, or even polynomials, but rather matrices. Unfortunately he died before he could follow up on these ideas. In this discussion we follow the usual practice of emphasizing Cayley’s and Sylvester’s contributions, but it would, for example, be possible to describe the history of matrix algebra from the point of view of Frobenius, Eisenstein, and Hermite as well.

A great deal has been written about Cayley and Sylvester as researchers and as friends. Each distinguished himself in mathematics at university, Cayley at Trinity College, Cambridge, and Sylvester at Saint John’s College, Cambridge. Cayley’s early academic successes led to increased opportunities at college as well as a stipend. Sylvester’s early successes proved to be a source of frustration. He was barred from a number of opportunities because of discrimination—he was Jewish—and he left Saint John’s without graduating. He would eventually receive his degrees in 1841 from Trinity College, Dublin.

When it came time to find employment as mathematicians, neither Cayley nor Sylvester found much in the way of work. Cayley solved the problem by becoming a lawyer. Sylvester, too, became a lawyer, but his route to the legal profession was more circuitous. In 1841 he left Great Britain and worked briefly on the faculty at the University of Virginia. He left the university several months later after an altercation with a student. Unable to find another

position in the United States, he returned to London in 1843 to work as an actuary. While working as an actuary, Sylvester tutored private pupils in mathematics, and it was during this time that he tutored the medical pioneer Florence Nightingale in mathematics. (Nightingale was a firm and early believer in the use of statistics to evaluate medical protocols.) Finally, in 1850 Sylvester turned to the legal profession to earn a living. That same year while they were both working as lawyers Cayley and Sylvester met and formed a lifelong friendship.

Cayley worked as a lawyer for 14 years before he joined the faculty at Cambridge in 1863. Sylvester worked as a lawyer for five years until he found a position at the Royal Military Academy, Woolwich. Cayley, a contemplative man, remained at Cambridge for most of the rest of his working life. The exception occurred when he spent a year at Johns Hopkins University in Baltimore, Maryland, at Sylvester's invitation. By contrast Sylvester remained at Woolwich for 15 years and then, in 1876, moved back to the United States to work at Johns Hopkins University. (Sylvester played an important role in establishing advanced mathematical research in the United States.) In 1883 Sylvester returned to the United Kingdom to work at Oxford University.

Although they were both creative mathematicians their approaches to mathematics were quite different. Cayley spoke carefully and produced mathematical papers that were well reasoned and rigorous. By contrast, Sylvester was excitable and talkative and did not hesitate to substitute his intuition for a rigorous proof. He sometimes produced mathematical papers that contained a great deal of elegant and poetic description but were decidedly short on mathematical rigor. Nevertheless his intuition could usually be shown to be correct.

The theory of determinants, spectral theory, and the theory of linear equations had already revealed many of the basic properties of matrices before anyone conceived of the idea of a matrix. Arthur Cayley remarked that logically the theory of matrices precedes the theory of determinants, but historically these theories were developed in just the opposite order. It was Cayley, author of "A Memoir on the Theory of Matrices," published in 1858, who



first described the properties of matrices as mathematical objects. He had been studying systems of equations of the form

$$a_{11}x + a_{12}y = u$$

$$a_{21}x + a_{22}y = v$$

(Notice that in this set of equations the variables  $x$  and  $y$  are the independent variables and the variables  $u$  and  $v$  are the dependent variables.) Apparently in an effort to streamline his notation he simply wrote  $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ , a shorthand form of the same equation that preserves all of the information.

Having defined a matrix he began to study the set of all such matrices as a mathematical system. The most useful and richest part of the theory concerns the mathematical properties of square matrices of a fixed size—they are called the set of all  $n \times n$  matrices, where  $n$  represents a fixed natural number greater than 1. In what follows we restrict our attention to  $2 \times 2$  matrices for simplicity, but similar definitions and results exist for square matrices of any size.

Matrix addition is defined elementwise. Given a pair of  $2 \times 2$  matrices, which we can represent with the symbols  $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$  and  $\begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ , the sum of these two matrices is  $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} + b_{11} & a_{12} + b_{12} \\ a_{21} + b_{21} & a_{22} + b_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ . (The difference of the two matrices is simply obtained by writing a subtraction sign in place of the addition sign.) With this definition of matrix addition the matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 0 & 0 \\ 0 & 0 \end{bmatrix}$  plays the same role as the number 0 in the real number system. (Notice that the set of matrices of the same size—the set of  $2 \times 2$  matrices, for example—form a group under the operation of addition.)

Cayley also defined matrix multiplication. The definition of matrix multiplication is not especially obvious to most of us, but to Cayley it was a simple matter because he and others had used this definition in the study of other mathematics problems, even

before he had begun the study of matrices (see the sidebar Matrix Multiplication).

There are differences between matrix arithmetic and the arithmetic of numbers that we learn in grade school. One significant difference is that multiplication is not commutative: That is, the order in which we multiply two matrices makes a difference. Given two matrices, which we represent with the letters  $A$  and  $B$ , it is generally false that  $AB$  and  $BA$  are equal. Ordinary multiplication of numbers, by contrast, is commutative:  $3 \times 4$  and  $4 \times 3$ , for example, represent the same number.

Another significant difference between matrix multiplication and the multiplication of numbers is that every *number* (except zero) has a multiplicative inverse. To appreciate what this means, recall that if the letter  $x$  represents a number other than zero, there is always another number, which we can write as  $x^{-1}$ , such that  $x \times x^{-1} = 1$ . To be sure, the set of all  $n \times n$  matrices has a matrix that corresponds to the number 1. This matrix, which is called the identity matrix and is usually represented by the capital letter  $I$ , has 1s along its main diagonal and zeros elsewhere. (Recall the main diagonal consists of those entries of the form  $a_{1,1}, a_{2,2}, \dots, a_{n,n}$ .) When the identity is multiplied by any matrix  $A$ , the result is  $A$ —in other words,  $IA = A$  and  $AI = A$ —and this, of course, is exactly what happens when a number is multiplied by the number 1. But there are *some* (nonzero)  $n \times n$  matrices with no multiplicative inverse, or to put it another way, for some  $n \times n$  matrices  $A$ , there is no matrix  $A^{-1}$  such that  $A \times A^{-1} = I$ . (Notice that because not every  $n \times n$  matrix has an inverse, the set of all nonzero  $n \times n$  matrices cannot form a group under multiplication because one of the group axioms is that every element in the set must have an inverse.)

There is an additional operation that one can perform in matrix arithmetic that connects the theory of matrices with ordinary numbers: Not only can one compute the product of two  $n \times n$  matrices; it is also possible to multiply any matrix by a number. For example, if the letter  $c$  represents any number then the

product of  $c$  and the matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$  is  $\begin{bmatrix} ca_{11} & ca_{12} \\ ca_{21} & ca_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ .

Cayley also investigated polynomials in which the variables that appear in the polynomial represent matrices instead of numbers. His most famous result is the relationship between a square matrix and its characteristic polynomial. On page 153, we described the characteristic polynomial of a matrix. Cayley showed that if the matrix is written in place of the variable in the characteristic polynomial and the indicated operations are performed, the result is always the 0 matrix. In other words, each matrix satisfies the equation obtained by setting its characteristic polynomial to 0, so it is sometimes said that every matrix is a root of its own characteristic polynomial. This is called the Hamilton-Cayley theorem after Cayley and the Irish mathematician and astronomer Sir William Henry Rowan Hamilton (1805–65), who discovered the same theorem but from a different point of view.

In symbols, the Hamilton-Cayley theorem looks like this: Let  $A$  be a square  $n \times n$  matrix. Let  $a_n \lambda^n + a_{n-1} \lambda^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 \lambda + a_0$  be its characteristic polynomial, then  $a_n A^n + a_{n-1} A^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 A + a_0 I = 0$ , where the symbol zero represents the  $n \times n$  matrix that has zeros for all its entries.

Cayley was a prominent and prolific mathematician, but his work on matrices did not attract much attention inside Great Britain. Outside Great Britain it was unknown. Consequently many of his ideas were later rediscovered elsewhere. In the 1880s, James Joseph Sylvester, who in the intervening years had become one of the most prominent mathematicians of his time, turned his attention to the same questions that Cayley had addressed about three decades earlier. Whether Sylvester had read Cayley's old monograph or rediscovered these ideas independently is not clear. In any case Sylvester's work had the effect of drawing attention to Cayley's earlier discoveries—a fact that seemed to please Sylvester. He always spoke highly of his friend—he once described Cayley's memoir on matrices as “the foundation stone” of the subject—but in this case Sylvester's prominence and his emphasis on the contributions of Cayley had the effect of obscuring the work of Frobenius, Eisenstein, Hermite, and others.

Sylvester did more than rediscover Cayley's work, however. Sylvester had made important contributions to the theory of

## MATRIX MULTIPLICATION

Matrix multiplication is defined for square matrices of a fixed but arbitrary size in such a manner that many of the laws that govern the arithmetic of ordinary numbers carry over to the matrix case. In what follows we restrict our attention to  $2 \times 2$  matrices, but similar definitions apply to any  $n \times n$  matrix.

Let the matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} c_{11} & c_{12} \\ c_{21} & c_{22} \end{bmatrix}$  represent the product of the matrices  $\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix}$  and  $\begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{bmatrix}$ . Each number  $c_{ij}$  is obtained by combining the  $i$ th row of the “ $a$ -matrix” with the  $j$ th column of the “ $b$ -matrix” in the following way:

$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} \end{bmatrix} \times \begin{bmatrix} b_{11} & b_{12} \\ b_{21} & b_{22} \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21} & a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22} \\ a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21} & a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22} \end{bmatrix}$$

For example, to compute  $c_{12}$ , which is equal to  $a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22}$ , multiply the first entry of the first row of the  $a$ -matrix by the first entry of the second column of the  $b$ -matrix, then add this to the product of the second entry of the first row of the  $a$ -matrix multiplied by the second entry of the second column of the  $b$ -matrix. Here are some consequences of this definition of multiplication:

1. The matrix  $\begin{bmatrix} 1 & 0 \\ 0 & 1 \end{bmatrix}$ , usually denoted as  $I$ , plays the same role as the number 1 in the real number system in the sense that  $AI = IA = A$  for all  $2 \times 2$  matrices.
2. If we let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  represent any three  $n \times n$  matrices, then multiplication “distributes” over addition, just as in ordinary arithmetic:  $A(B + C) = AB + AC$ .
3. If we let  $A$ ,  $B$ , and  $C$  represent any three  $n \times n$  matrices, the associative property applies:  $A(BC) = (AB)C$ .
4. Matrix multiplication is not usually commutative:  $AB \neq BA$ .

How did this definition of multiplication arise? Mathematicians, Cayley among them, had already studied functions of the form  $z = \frac{a_{11}y + a_{12}}{a_{21}y + a_{22}}$ .

(continues)

## MATRIX MULTIPLICATION

(continued)

If we take a second function of the same form, say,  $y = \frac{b_{11}x + b_{12}}{b_{21}x + b_{22}}$ , and

we write  $\frac{b_{11}y + b_{12}}{b_{21}y + b_{22}}$  in place of  $y$  in the expression for  $z$ , and finally

perform all of the arithmetic, we obtain the following expression:

$$z = \frac{(a_{11}b_{11} + a_{12}b_{21})x + (a_{11}b_{12} + a_{12}b_{22})}{(a_{21}b_{11} + a_{22}b_{21})x + (a_{21}b_{12} + a_{22}b_{22})}.$$

Compare this with the entries in the

product matrix already given. The corresponding entries are identical. It is in this sense that matrix multiplication was discovered before matrices were discovered!

determinants for decades, and he had learned how to use determinants to investigate a number of problems. In a sense he had become familiar with many of the problems that are important to the theory of matrices before discovering matrices themselves. (Sylvester himself coined the term *matrix*.)

Sylvester was interested in the relationships that exist between a matrix and its eigenvalues. He discovered, for example, that if  $A$  represents an  $n \times n$  matrix and  $\lambda$  is an eigenvalue of  $A$ , then  $\lambda^j$  is an eigenvalue of the matrix  $A^j$ , where  $A^j$  represents the matrix product of  $A$  multiplied by itself  $j$  times. He produced other results in a similar vein. For example, suppose the matrix  $A$  has an inverse. Let  $A^{-1}$  represent the inverse of the matrix  $A$  so that  $A^{-1} \times A$  equals the identity matrix, that is, the matrix with 1s down the main diagonal and 0s elsewhere. Let  $\lambda$  represent an eigenvalue of  $A$ ; then  $\lambda^{-1}$ —also written as  $1/\lambda$ —is an eigenvalue of  $A^{-1}$ .

The work of Cayley, Sylvester, and others led to the development of a branch of mathematics that proved to be very useful in ways that they could not possibly have predicted. For example, in the early years of the 20th century, physicists were searching for a way of mathematically expressing new ideas about the inner

workings of the atom. These were the early years of that branch of physics called quantum mechanics. It turned out that the theory of matrices—developed by Cayley, Sylvester, Frobenius, Hermite, and Eisenstein in the preceding century—was exactly the right language for expressing the ideas of quantum mechanics. All the physicists needed to do was use the mathematics that had been previously developed. The theory of matrices proved useful in other ways as well.

### Emmy Noether and the Theory of Rings

Mathematicians' understanding of algebra as a mathematical discipline changed radically in the 20th century. For millennia equations were the subject matter of algebra. Mathematicians used algebra to state equations, and they used algebra to develop algorithms for solving equations. During the 19th century, they developed concepts and techniques that revealed when certain algorithms did not exist. (See the accounts of the work of Abel and Galois in chapter 6.) As the 19th century drew to a close, mathematicians became increasingly preoccupied with using algebra to make broad statements about the properties of systems of polynomials, systems of matrices, and the properties of specific number systems. Today, however, a different conception of what it means to do algebraic research prevails. One of the most influential pioneers in the new algebra was the German mathematician Emmy Noether (1882–1935).

Emmy Noether demonstrated a talent for languages and mathematics. Her original intention was to teach foreign languages at a secondary school, and she received certifications in French and English. Eventually, however, she turned her attention to mathematics. (Her father, Max Noether, was a prominent mathematician who taught at Erlangen University.) Emmy received a Ph.D. from Erlangen University, but at that time women were barred from becoming university faculty members. Occasionally, she taught at Erlangen in place of her father, but she did so without pay. Her mathematical talents had, however, been recognized by David Hilbert and Felix Klein, two of the most prominent mathematicians in the



*Emmy Noether, whose abstract approach to the study of algebra revolutionized how mathematicians everywhere understood the subject* (Special Collections Department, Bryn Mawr College)

world at the time. Both were on the faculty at Göttingen University, which for generations had been home to some of the world's most successful mathematicians. Although Hilbert and Klein petitioned the university to waive its rules and hire Noether as a faculty member, they were initially unsuccessful. Instead, she taught classes under Hilbert's name. Her stature as a mathematician continued to grow, however, and soon mathematicians from around the world went to Göttingen to hear her lectures. Finally, the university relented, and Noether became a faculty member at Göttingen. She remained at Göttingen until the National

Socialist German Workers' Party (Nazi Party) came to power. Noether, who was Jewish, left Germany for the United States. She found a position at Bryn Mawr College in late 1933, and in 1935 she died from complications following surgery.

Early in her career, Noether's best-known contribution was in the area of mathematical physics. (At Hilbert's request she had investigated a question relating to the theory of relativity.) But her first interest was algebra. To appreciate part of her contribution in this area, it helps to know that some of her earliest research involved the decomposition of polynomials—that is, she studied the problem of representing higher degree polynomials as products of lower order polynomials. (The polynomial  $x^3 - 1$  can, for example, be factored using only real numbers as  $(x - 1)(x^2 + x + 1)$ . If complex numbers are allowed then it can be factored as  $(x - 1)(x + [1 + 3i]/2)(x + [1 - 3i]/2)$ .) The decompositions that are pos-

sible depend upon the numbers that one is willing to accept as roots and the numbers that appear as coefficients. She was also interested in the factorization of integers. (Every integer can be written [factored] as a product of prime numbers. The number 24, for example, can be factored as  $2^3 \times 3$ , and the number 33 can be factored as  $3 \times 11$ . Prime numbers are their own factors.) Factoring integers and factoring polynomials have a lot in common. One of Noether's great insights was to identify what these two different-looking systems (and others!) have in common and to study an abstract model of all such systems. The name for this abstract model is a ring. Noether did not "discover" rings. Other mathematicians before her had used the concept to study integers and polynomials. What Noether did was to introduce the study of abstract rings, which were generalized models of classes of specific mathematical systems.

To understand Noether's insight, consider, for example, the set of polynomials with rational numbers as coefficients, and consider the set of integers. We will represent the set of all such polynomials with the letter  $P$ , and we will represent the set of all integers with the letter  $Z$ . Both sets have a lot in common. The following is a list of some of their commonalities:

1. The set  $P$  forms a group under the operation of addition and so does the set  $Z$ . (The group axioms as they apply to the symmetry group of a square are listed on pages 116–117, or see the glossary.)
2. For both  $P$  and  $Z$ , addition is commutative, which is another way of saying that it is always true that  $a + b = b + a$  whether  $a$  and  $b$  represent integers or polynomials.
3. If two elements of  $P$  are multiplied together, the result is another element of  $P$ , and if two elements of  $Z$  are multiplied together, the result is another element in  $Z$ .
4. Multiplication of elements in both sets is associative, which is another way of saying that it is always true that  $a \times (b \times c) = (a \times b) \times c$ , whether  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  represent integers or polynomials.



5. Multiplication distributes over addition, which is another way of saying that it is always true that  $a \times (b + c) = a \times b + a \times c$  whether  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  represent integers or polynomials.

Noether's idea was to consider an arbitrary set, which we can represent as  $\{a, b, c, \dots\}$ , and two operations defined on this set. Let the “+” sign denote one of the operations and the “ $\times$ ” sign denote the other operation. We can say that these signs represent addition and multiplication, although this is just a matter of convenience since we do not know what, if anything, the letters in the set represent. We suppose that under these operations, conditions 1–5 are satisfied. The resulting mathematical “structure” is called a ring, and conditions 1–5 are the axioms that define a particular type of ring called an “associative ring.” (We can, if we choose, change the axioms somewhat to obtain different types of rings—other axioms can be added depending on the needs of the researcher—but as a matter of definition conditions 1 through 5 must be satisfied in order for the object to be called a ring.)

Noether discovered that rings have a rich mathematical structure in the sense that she could prove many theorems about any set that satisfies the ring axioms. At first glance, this might not seem to be significant since she was proving theorems about relationships among sets of letters. This activity requires a certain mental agility, but it might seem to be no more significant than solving a crossword puzzle. What makes Noether's approach important is that what is true of an abstract ring—for example, an abstract associative ring—is true for every mathematical system that conforms to the axioms that define an abstract associative ring. The set  $P$  of all polynomials with rational coefficients, the set  $Z$  of integers, the set of all  $n \times n$  matrices with the operations defined earlier (the  $n$  in “ $n \times n$  matrices” is fixed but arbitrary so, for example, the list includes the set of all  $2 \times 2$  matrices and the set of all  $1,000 \times 1,000$  matrices), and the set of all even integers under the usual definitions of addition and multiplication are examples of associative rings. Many other examples exist. By studying an abstract associa-

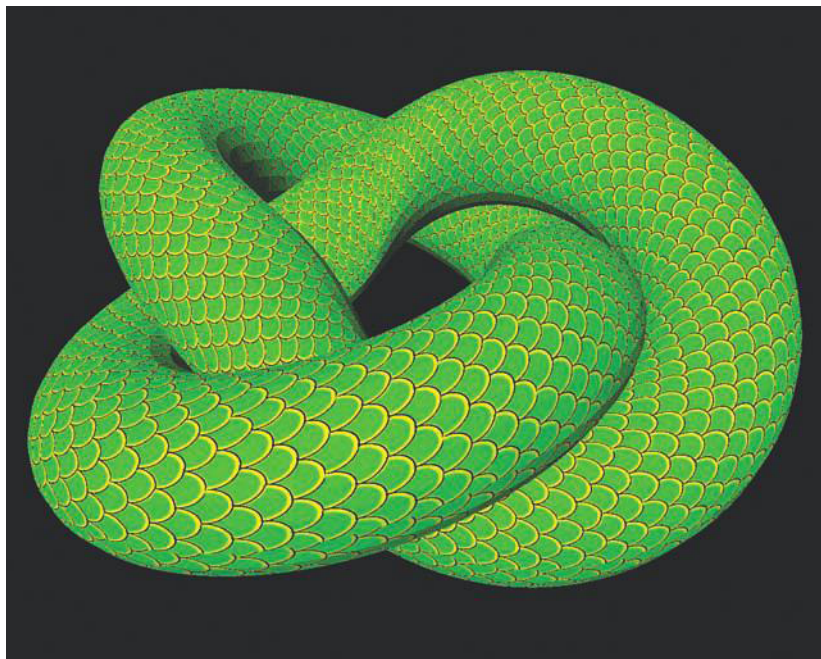
tive ring, Noether was able to make important statements about the logical structure of all associative rings.

Early in the 20th century, mathematicians were faced with an incredible array of different-looking systems. A discovery about the property of one system might also apply to other similar systems, but this was not always clear because there was no rigorous definition of what “similar” meant. What Emmy Noether did—at least in algebra, at least for rings—was to introduce a different way of looking at mathematical systems. She demonstrated that many concrete systems of numbers, polynomials, and matrices, for example, had enough in common that they could be adequately represented by a single abstract model. Theorems that were proved within the context of the model also applied to all of the systems that the model represented. She did not just generate new knowledge about algebra, she introduced a new conception of algebra. Algebra became concerned with the study of abstract “structures,” models that represented classes of concrete objects.

### Nicolas Bourbaki and Mathematical Structure

Modern mathematics has been heavily influenced by Nicolas Bourbaki. Paul Halmos, an important mathematician in his own right, called Bourbaki “. . . one of the most influential mathematicians of the 20th century.” But Halmos’s tribute was only partly serious. Although Bourbaki produced a number of important and influential books, including a landmark text on algebra, Bourbaki did not exist. Nicolas Bourbaki is a pseudonym for a group of French mathematicians. Despite—or perhaps because of—changes in membership, the group continued to publish for decades. (Members were supposed to quit at age 50.)

The Nicolas Bourbaki group began to meet in the mid-1930s with the goal of producing a text on calculus that would “. . . define for 25 years the syllabus for the certificate in differential and integral calculus . . .” Driven by the perception that France had fallen behind Germany in mathematical research, the original Bourbaki project included some of the best mathematicians of the era, including Henri Cartan (1904–2008), Jean Dieudonné



*Faced with an increasingly diverse collection of mathematical objects and logical structures, members of the Nicolas Bourbaki group sought to identify unifying concepts. (Stewart Dickson)*

(1906–92), and Andre Weil (1906–98) among others. Nicolas Bourbaki was supposed to be a collaborative effort at producing mathematical works that emphasized modern concepts. Members would occasionally meet face-to-face, and they regularly published an in-house newsletter that enabled the participants to exchange ideas and debate about the best way to proceed on each project.

The group produced articles and books. Among the books was a 10-volume set called *Eléments de mathématique*, which included the following titles: *Theory of Sets*, *Algebra*, *General Topology*, *Functions of a Real Variable*, *Topological Vector Spaces*, *Integration*, *Lie Groups and Lie Algebras*, *Commutative Algebra*, *Spectral Theories*, and *Differential and Analytic Manifolds*. Among the articles was an oft-quoted work entitled, “The Architecture of Mathematics.” This article raised a question that is still debated today: Is mathematics

a single branch of knowledge or has it become a “tower of Babel” comprised of numerous disciplines isolated from each other by disparate methods, goals, and vocabulary? Most mathematicians would agree that it is better if experts in different branches of mathematics can communicate across their areas of expertise. In this way, they can exchange ideas, recognize common problems, and share common solutions, but as mathematics has become increasingly specialized this has become harder to accomplish. The unity of the field could be maintained, according to Bourbaki, by emphasizing the axiomatic method in the discovery of mathematical truth and by placing a greater emphasis on the role of mathematical structures. The existence of such structures enables mathematicians to simplify.

One sometimes hears criticism of the abstract nature of mathematics—that it is unnecessarily complicated. Mathematicians’ emphasis on symbolic language as opposed to plain prose, for example, is sometimes characterized as confusing. Why use a symbol when a word will do? But this criticism stems from a misunderstanding about the nature of mathematics. Mathematicians must be precise when they say something if they are to say anything meaningful, and they have learned through experience that an abstract language *is* the simplest way to present mathematical ideas precisely. One page of algebraic symbols may be worth 100 pages of plain prose—assuming that the ideas can be expressed in plain prose at all.

An abstract approach to mathematics is not just simpler; it is also conceptually more powerful. Theorems proved about one abstract mathematical structure apply to all instances of that structure. What Noether had done with rings, Bourbaki attempted to impose across all of mathematics. By attempting to identify (or create) a mathematical architecture that would reveal how different branches of mathematics are related to each other, they hoped to demonstrate that mathematics is a conceptually unified whole, a universe of the mind, and not just a jumbled collection of isolated results.

Not only was it necessary, therefore, to create and exploit models of classes of systems—groups, rings, fields, and so on—it was also necessary to specify how these conceptual models were

related to each other. Some mathematical groups, for example, are more general than others. Recall that in the discussion of the symmetry transformations of the square (see chapter 6) there was a subgroup, the group of rotations, that was “nested” within the larger group. One could say, therefore, that the group of symmetry transformations of the square has a richer structure than the group of rotations of the square. Many other examples of this nesting phenomenon exist within the class of groups, within the class of rings, and within the class of fields. But every ring contains a group and every field contains a ring. Consequently, there are important relations between the class of groups and the class of rings, between the class of groups and the class of fields, and between the class of rings and the class of fields. And there are other algebraic structures in addition to the ones mentioned here. (There is not enough space in this book to discuss them all.) Explicitly identifying how these structures and classes of structures are related to each other is an enormous task, but if it can be accomplished, it will be easier to understand how ideas in one branch of mathematics apply to other branches of mathematics. It will be easier to see mathematics as a unified whole.

Although Bourbaki emphasized the role of structure and even developed criteria for delineating relationships between structures, their program was not especially successful in developing an overarching theory of mathematical structure. Another theory, called category theory, has superseded Bourbaki’s ideas about structure. (A description of category theory requires too much mathematical background to be given here.) It is too soon to say, however, whether or not category theory will reveal a unifying structure or set of structures that apply across all of mathematics; whether or not it will prove to be an all-embracing theory in which each discipline has its own place and its own set of relationships with other disciplines.

## The Problem Solvers

Because a great deal of academic algebraic research is concerned with the study of abstract groups, rings, fields, and other algebraic

objects, it is easy to lose sight of the fact that many mathematicians continue to work full-time developing better algorithms. They are the problem solvers, the intellectual descendants of Brahmagupta, al-Khwārizmī, and Tartaglia. The difference is that the equations (and the algorithms) have changed.

Computation has always been an important part of mathematics. It remains important today, but now most computations are performed by computers. Consequently, the search for better algorithms usually means the search for better computer algorithms. Computers process and store information in ways that are quite different from the ways that people perform these same tasks, and the best algorithms make essential use of these differences. In addition, the types of problems that computers solve are different from the types of problems that people solve.

Systems of linear equations are of special interest to researchers who concentrate on so-called numerical methods. In concept, the linear systems studied by researchers have the same properties as the linear systems that students learn to solve in junior and senior high school. A model for a three-variable system can be written like this:

$$\begin{aligned}a_{11}x + a_{12}y + a_{13}z &= b_1 \\a_{21}x + a_{22}y + a_{23}z &= b_2 \\a_{31}x + a_{32}y + a_{33}z &= b_3\end{aligned}$$

or it can be written in matrix form like this:

$$(8.1) \quad \begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & a_{12} & a_{13} \\ a_{21} & a_{22} & a_{23} \\ a_{31} & a_{32} & a_{33} \end{bmatrix} \begin{bmatrix} x \\ y \\ z \end{bmatrix} = \begin{bmatrix} b_1 \\ b_2 \\ b_3 \end{bmatrix}$$

The  $a_{11}$ ,  $a_{12}$ , . . . appearing in the  $3 \times 3$  matrix are called the coefficients of the matrix. They are numbers. The  $b_1$ ,  $b_2$ , and  $b_3$  also represent numbers. The  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  are the “unknowns.” What is new about the systems of linear equations used in modern scientific computations is their size. The systems studied by contemporary

researchers are so large that no person could ever write one down—never mind solve it. Such large systems require their own specialized algorithms. Not that the techniques used to solve small systems of equations—the types we learn in school—are “wrong.” In theory, the same techniques that are used to solve small systems can also be used to solve large ones, but while the techniques used to solve small systems are conceptually correct, they are seldom useful in solving larger systems. The techniques that are used to solve systems of equations by hand are just too slow and too labor intensive—even for a computer—when they are applied to very large systems of equations.

Any engineer, scientist, or mathematician who requires a state-of-the-art computer to solve a problem is usually allocated a fixed amount of time to obtain a solution. The reason is that other researchers are waiting to use the same computer. The supply of powerful computers is limited, and demand for access to these machines is strong. If an algorithm is inefficient, then a researcher’s problem may not be solved in the allocated time—in which case it might not be solved at all—or one problem may be solved when two could have been solved. Solving problems as efficiently as possible can mean the difference between success and failure for a program of research.

One important class of algorithms, for example, is the class of *sparse matrix techniques*. Many scientific and engineering problems produce very large systems of linear equations in which most of the coefficients are zero. Sparse matrix techniques have no meaning for the systems of linear equations that one encounters in high school because those systems have so few coefficients that it hardly matters whether some of the coefficients are zero or not. But when there are many millions of coefficients, sparse matrix techniques can mean the difference between solving the problem and not solving it.

Sparse matrix techniques are used both to store and to manipulate matrices. The storage techniques are called compression techniques. A simple example of a matrix compression technique would be to store only the numbers  $a_{11}$ ,  $a_{22}$ , and  $a_{33}$  instead of the entire sparse matrix



$$\begin{bmatrix} a_{11} & 0 & 0 \\ 0 & a_{22} & 0 \\ 0 & 0 & a_{33} \end{bmatrix}.$$

The techniques become more sophisticated as the sparse matrices become less ordered.

There are also a variety of methods for solving problems involving sparse matrices. The goal of these algorithms is to exploit the sparse structure of the matrix. To better appreciate why specialized algorithms are necessary, consider the problem of solving a system of linear equations in which the matrix has  $n$  columns and  $n$  rows. The number of entries in such a matrix is  $n^2$ . If we count the number of simple arithmetic operations—that is, the number of additions, subtractions, multiplications, and divisions—needed to compute the inverse of an  $n \times n$  matrix, the number of operations is roughly proportional to  $n^3$ . When  $n$  equals 3, as it does in equation 8.1, we might compute the inverse to the matrix, and then multiply both sides of the equation by the inverse. The result would be an equation with the variables isolated on one side and the answers on the other. By hand, this is a lot of work, but students all around the world do this everyday in linear algebra classes. (To be clear about the procedure just described, in one dimension it looks like this: The equation corresponding to equation 8.1 would be  $ax = b$ , and the solution, which is obtained by multiplying both sides of the equation by the “ $1 \times 1$  matrix”  $a^{-1}$ , is  $x = b / a$ . A similar sort of procedure is possible when  $a$  represents an  $n \times n$  matrix with a nonzero determinant and  $b$  and  $x$  are  $n \times 1$  matrices. We omit the details of how this is done.)

Now consider a problem that involves a matrix with 1,000 rows and 1,000 columns. If this problem were written out, it would look like equation 8.1 but much bigger. It would, for example, have 1,000 variables instead of three. (A problem involving 1,000 variables is a small problem by contemporary standards.) The number of entries in a  $1,000 \times 1,000$  matrix is 1 million, and the number of operations needed to compute the inverse of such a matrix is roughly proportional to  $1,000 \times 1,000 \times 1,000$ , or 1 billion. If the



number of variables again increased by a factor of 10, the number of operations needed to compute the inverse would increase by a factor of about 1,000. It would, therefore, be proportional to 1 trillion. The larger the problem, the more critical it is, therefore, to use the best possible algorithms. The work increases rapidly as the number of variables increases, and if the matrix is sparse, the use of sparse matrix techniques becomes critical to obtaining a solution in the allotted time.

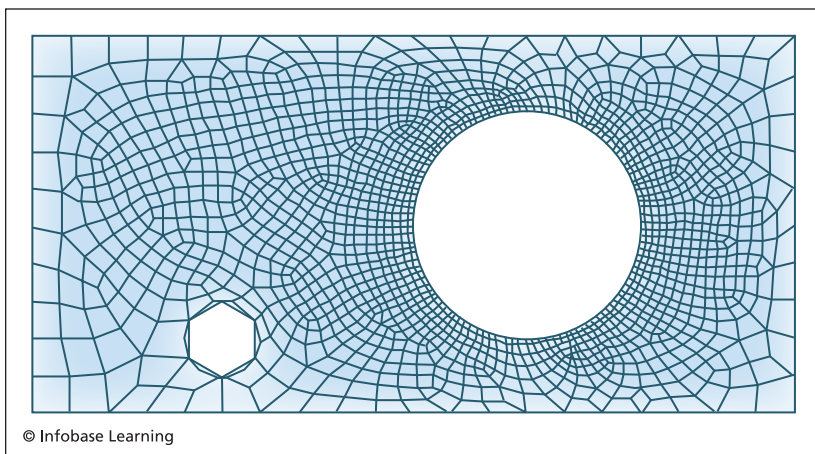
Another aspect of contemporary computational mathematics that extends the ideas described in this book concerns the development of new types of coordinate systems. To see why new coordinate systems are necessary, recall that a great deal of classical mathematics is concerned with the visualization of functions defined over sets containing infinitely many points. Part of the reason for mathematicians' preference for infinite sets over finite ones is that infinite point sets often simplify the study of functions. But computers do not make use of the infinite. They only require that there are "enough" points to complete the computation, and a finite number of points is always sufficient for computation. Often the only points that the computers use are "grid points," those points where coordinate lines cross. (Imagine a plane with a Cartesian coordinate system, then the grid points could be exactly those points with integer coordinates.)

If the grid points with integer coordinates are too far apart for a particular application, they can be supplemented by drawing additional lines parallel to the  $y$ -axis and passing through the points  $(m/n, 0)$  and with lines parallel to the  $x$ -axis and passing through the points  $(0, m/n)$ , where  $n$  is a fixed natural number greater than 1 and  $m$  is any integer. At the points where these lines intersect each other, additional grid points are created. In theory, this method of introducing more grid points always works provided  $n$  is large enough. One can always create enough grid points to enable the computer to produce an accurate picture of the function in question. In practice, however, the method fails because it is terribly inefficient. As more points are introduced, the amount of computation required to evaluate the function at all of the grid points rises rapidly—too rapidly for the method to be practical.

The key to creating an efficient coordinate system is to introduce additional grid points only where they are needed. In a region where a function changes very slowly, a few grid points are all that is required to create an accurate visualization of the graph of the function. By contrast, in a region where a function changes rapidly—its graph may contain, for example, many oscillations in a small region or a single sharp isolated cusp—the computed graph will fail to reveal the presence of these features if the grid points are spaced too far apart. The computation will fail for the same reason one cannot convey the tempo of a piece of music with a single snap of the fingers—there is not enough information to draw firm conclusions. Consequently, the coordinate system must be adapted to the specific function under consideration. Grid points must be placed far apart in regions where the function changes slowly, and they must be densely packed in regions where the function changes rapidly. Coordinate systems with this property are called adaptive, and the techniques used to create the adaptive systems are called numerical grid generation techniques.

Today, there is a branch of mathematics specifically concerned with the creation of adaptive coordinate systems. Individuals concerned with establishing the necessary algorithms (and proving that the algorithms have the necessary properties) are the intellectual successors to Descartes and Fermat, the first mathematicians to recognize the utility of coordinate systems in the study of functions. (See, for example, the interview with Dr. Bonita Saunders in the Afterword.)

Numerical algorithms for computers are highly specialized. The language, the techniques, and the concepts that researchers use in the development of these algorithms are understood by a relatively small number of individuals, but most of us are somewhat familiar with the numerical simulations that result when these techniques are used in conjunction with powerful computers. Sometimes we see the simulations on television or on the Web or we see photographs in books. Combustion engineers, meteorologists, biochemists, aerospace engineers, and many others use these simulations in two essential ways. First, the simulations are used to gain insight into the phenomena that each researcher seeks to



*An adaptive coordinate system on a rectangular region punctured by a large and a small hole. It is used to calculate the effects of heating around the edge of the larger hole. Notice the coordinate system is highly irregular. In particular, the coordinate lines are dense in areas of rapid change and less dense elsewhere. This coordinate system enables the investigator to efficiently use the power of the computer. The creation of such coordinate systems is an important discipline within applied mathematics. ([www.sandia.gov](http://www.sandia.gov))*

model. Second, the simulations also enable engineers and scientists to better understand the limitations of their models by comparing the outcomes of their simulations to experimental results. It is no exaggeration to say that contemporary scientific progress would be impossible without these highly specialized algorithms.

# CONCLUSION

Mathematics is unique in the way that it progresses. To see the difference, compare mathematics with science. Contemporary astronomers do not much concern themselves with what ancient Greek astronomers thought, because they know that most of what ancient Greek astronomers thought was true is false. Modern astronomy has replaced ancient astronomy. By contrast, what Greek mathematicians proved true 2 millennia ago is still true today. It has not been replaced; nor will it be replaced. The reason is that in mathematics logic is the only criteria by which truth is judged. Mathematically speaking, if something is logical it is correct. A future logical deduction cannot prove a previous logical deduction was incorrect. The situation is different for scientists. They may produce logical results, but their discoveries must also agree with the world as it is revealed by experiment. Mathematics is under no such restriction. Science grows in a (more or less) linear way. New results replace old ones. Mathematics grows like a quilt. One patch is added to another—no replacement, just accumulation.

Algebra is as old as civilization. Every civilization that has left written records has left records of algebraic calculations, some more sophisticated than others, and for most of history algebra was concerned with equations. Mathematicians sought better ways to state equations and to solve them. This aspect of algebra is still important. Many mathematicians are developing software that efficiently solves huge or complicated systems of equations. New breakthroughs in hardware require innovations in software and vice versa. The mathematics is complex and the results are astonishing. The scale of these calculations would have been inconceivable to mathematicians even a few generations ago, and much of modern life depends on the continued success of these mathematicians. Algebra as a collection of algorithms is a mathematical tradition that dates back to the mathematicians of Mesopotamia who

carefully pressed the results of their computations into slabs of wet clay and the mathematicians of ancient China who recorded their results in the form of elegantly drawn characters.

In the 20th century, many mathematicians turned their attention to the development and study of generalized models of mathematical systems. They sought to identify what was essential in a class of systems and to discard the rest. The essential parts were stated in the form of axioms, and once the axioms were determined, the act of mathematical discovery was “reduced” to drawing logical conclusions from the axioms. Examples of these axiomatic systems include abstract groups, rings, and fields. So successful was this approach that it has become the major preoccupation of academic mathematicians. The creation and study of abstract models have led to a simplification of mathematics. Many formerly disparate branches of mathematics are now perceived as applications of certain basic principles applied to specific systems. Without the simplification made possible by this higher level of abstraction, contemporary mathematics would just be a jumble of disconnected results.

Today some have turned their attention to the development of abstract models that would be powerful enough to reveal the structure of mathematics as a whole. The search for these larger structures has, so far, only been partly successful, but the fact that mathematicians can conceive of the question and achieve some success in formulating an answer shows just how far algebra has progressed. Progress in algebra is, as it has always been, an essential component of progress in science, engineering, and mathematics.

# AFTERWORD

## AN INTERVIEW WITH DR. BONITA SAUNDERS ON THE DIGITAL LIBRARY OF MATHEMATICAL FUNCTIONS

*Dr. Bonita Saunders is a research mathematician at the National Institute of Standards and Technology (NIST), one of the primary federal centers for research in the physical sciences. She is a graduate of the College of William and Mary, and she received her Ph.D. from Old Dominion University. While studying for her Ph.D., she performed research at NASA's Langley Research Center on the application of numerical grid generation to problems in computational fluid dynamics. She has published extensively on the subjects of numerical grid generation and on techniques for the visualization of functions. This interview took place on February 11, 2010.*



*Dr. Bonita Saunders* (Dr. Bonita Saunders)

**Tabak:** Could you tell me a little bit about NIST and the work that you do there?

**Saunders:** NIST is a governmental agency that falls under the Department of Commerce. Its mission is to develop measurement standards and technology that help U.S. industries compete—whether it’s within the country or globally. I’m a research mathematician in the Mathematical and Computational Sciences Division, which comes under the Information Technology Laboratory. My duties are basically to develop software and design techniques that facilitate the solving of problems in the mathematical and physical sciences and to consult with the other laboratories at NIST.

**Tabak:** What caught my eye about the work that you do at NIST was the research you have done on visualizing functions—in particular, the Digital Library of Mathematical Functions (DLMF). What was the motivation for compiling this “dictionary” of functions?

**Saunders:** The DLMF is actually a handbook containing the formulas, properties, and graphs of mathematical functions important in the physical sciences. There are two parts to it. There’s the digital library part of it, which will be freely available on the web, and the book version, which will be called the *NIST Handbook of Mathematical Functions*. It is designed to replace another handbook of mathematical functions that’s still widely used—the *NBS Handbook of Mathematical Functions*, edited by Abramowitz and Stegun and published in 1964 by the National Bureau of Standards (NBS), the former name of NIST.

**Tabak:** I’m familiar with it.

**Saunders:** And even though the book goes all the way back to 1964 and really hasn’t been changed much over the years, it’s still one of the most cited publications to come out of NIST or NBS. It’s still used by the physical sciences community. There was a push within the community—especially within the physics com-

munity—for an update of the book. It was decided that we would not only update it, but completely rewrite it, expand it, and also put it on the Web as a digital library.

The authors of the chapters—just as in the original handbook—come from many different places. They are mathematicians, physicists, and engineers from all over the United States and abroad who are key experts on the definitions and properties of the functions. The project is a pretty big endeavor. The editing, organization, and initial validation of the chapters—and the design and construction of the digital library, which includes a mathematical search engine and interactive visualizations—were done at NIST. An international team of experts is responsible for the final validation of the chapters.

**Tabak:** Could you talk a little bit about the applications for these functions and how you chose the functions that are included?

**Saunders:** It's kind of interesting to look at the original handbook. You have these high-level mathematical functions that arise as solutions to physical problems—

**Tabak:** First, could you explain what you mean by a “high-level” mathematical function?

**Saunders:** High-level mathematical functions are also called special functions. Some examples would be Bessel functions, Airy functions, hypergeometric functions, or orthogonal polynomials. When trying to solve partial differential equations that model some kind of physical process, a researcher might discover that the equations reduce to simpler equations. The form or structure of the new equations may suggest that a particular mathematical function is the solution.

By looking at the definition and properties of the function in the *Handbook* the researcher can determine whether that is the case. If correct, the scientist may not only have an exact solution to his problem, but also gain qualitative information about how the solution behaves—where its value is zero, if and where



it blows up, where its maximum and minimum values are. This may give the scientist more information than simply solving the initial equations on a computer. Even if the new equations don't exactly match those of the special function, this initial analysis may still give the scientist clues about what to look for when trying to solve the original equations numerically, that is, on a computer.

**Tabak:** So the functions are used in meteorology? Fluid dynamics? Aeronautics?

**Saunders:** Practically any area where physical phenomena are modeled by equations. For instance, the Airy functions come up in the field of optics—solving problems in that area. Bessel functions can be found in applications involving heat conduction, hydrodynamics, and computational fluid dynamics.

**Tabak:** Have there been many changes in the list of functions between the 1964 edition of the *Handbook* and today's?

**Saunders:** Most of the functions that are in the '64 edition are in the current edition, but some new functions have been added. In the original edition there were a lot of tables of values. Now that you can use many computer packages to get as many values of a function as you want, most of the tables have been taken out. While the original edition was about 1,000 pages, the new edition was expected to be much smaller, but there was so much additional information that the new edition is also close to 1,000 pages.

**Tabak:** When they computed values for the functions in 1964, they computed values at regularly spaced grid points. I gather that is not what you are doing now. Could you talk a little about numerical grid generation—what that involves and why you do it?

**Saunders:** Probably most computations would still be done over a regularly spaced grid, but I used numerical grid generation to create accurate graphs of the functions. While the original handbook

contains very few graphs, the new handbook will have more than 400 color graphs and the digital version, close to 500. The digital library will also have more than 200 interactive 3-D visualizations of function surfaces.

So the grid generation comes up in trying to make the graphs and visualizations as accurate as possible. You want the data to be accurate, but you also want the graph or the plot to be accurate. To ensure data accuracy, we compute the function several different ways using whatever software or available information that we have—commercial codes, FORTRAN code, or even the chapter author's personal code. We then compare the results and try to determine the cause of any discrepancies.

Once we know the data are accurate, we also want the plot to be realistic.

**Tabak:** Yes—

**Saunders:** Because you can have accurate data and still not have a graph that really shows the key features of that function—

**Tabak:** And how would that happen? How could you have accurate data and yet have a graph that was inaccurate?

**Saunders:** Suppose you try to plot a function over variables  $x$  and  $y$  with a standard commercial package. If you select the function and simply ask for a plot over a given  $x$ -range and  $y$ -range, you may get a surface plot that misses key areas. For example, if the function being plotted represents the absolute value of another function it might have a sharp cusp where the value is zero. If there are not enough data points near the cusp, you may not see it. If there is a point where the function has a pole—that is, the function goes off to infinity—how does the package show that? It can't show infinity. It has to stop somewhere. The area around a pole usually looks similar to a stove pipe that goes on forever. Some packages automatically choose a height, cut off the stove pipe, and cover it. This makes it look like the covered area is part of the function. Other packages just connect whatever points are

in the vicinity of the pole. When there are several poles this can create a jagged effect that looks like a mountain range.

We wanted to make sure we brought out the key features of each function and made the graphs look as accurate as possible—showing cusps, zeros, poles, branch cuts (where the function splits into multiple values). So basically, that's where the grid generation comes in. I design a grid that brings out those key features, and I compute the value of the function at the grid points to obtain the graph. And so how do I know where the key features are?

**Tabak:** Yes, I was going to ask—

**Saunders:** A variety of ways. I may do an initial computation of the function using a package. If I see an area where it looks like there might be something, then I investigate that area more carefully. I may also talk to the chapter author or read the author's draft to get information about poles, branch cuts or whatever. It's an exploration. You're trying to get as much information as you possibly can.

Once I have that information I have an idea for how the grid should look. If I am going to capture a cusp, I have to find the location of the zeros—where the function is equal to zero. I make sure those points are on the grid. If there's a pole, or if the values of the function become very large (or small) on the region over which I want to compute the function, I try to decide at what height I want to stop the function. Do I want it to go up to 5, or 20, or 30? Then I compute the contour of the function for that height. For example, if I choose a maximum height of, let's say, 10 then I compute the locations where that function will have a value of 10, and I use that contour to create a boundary for the grid that I will use to compute the function over.

**Tabak:** So the grid lies on the plane like curves on a topographical map?

**Saunders:** That's exactly what you have. For example, to bring out the features of the Airy function I chose a very short height—

about 3. So I compute the contour curves for a height of 3, and then I connect those curves so that I have a closed boundary. So instead of computing the function over a rectangular boundary, I compute it over a boundary that has the contour shapes in it. It gives me a nice clipping of the function, a nice smooth cut, and I don't have to worry about a ragged edge at the top. The contour for a pole will usually look like a small circle and probably be in the interior of the domain. That means my grid will have a hole in it. When I compute the function over the grid, the function surface will be clipped so that I get a nice smooth cut at the height I selected. This produces a graph that is more accurate, less confusing, and aesthetically more pleasing.

**Tabak:** So just to be sure that I understand: The coordinate system that you use for a function will look like a topographical map. Some lines run around the sides of features—like lines running around the sides of mountains on a map—and these are lines of constant height. And some lines run down the sides of the features like lines running down the sides of the mountains. Then you compute the values of the function at the points where the lines intersect?

**Saunders:** That's the general idea. It's a little more complex than that. What you are saying would probably take more time. What I'm doing is something called numerical grid generation. Basically, that's the development of curvilinear coordinate systems. Do you know about polar coordinate systems?

**Tabak:** Sure.

**Saunders:** A polar coordinate system is basically a curvilinear coordinate system, where you have a mapping from a rectangle to a circle. The rectangle has coordinates  $r$  and  $\theta$  (theta)—that is,  $x = r \cos \theta$  and  $y = r \sin \theta$ —so on the rectangle you have the axis of the  $r$  and  $\theta$ , and on the other side, on the physical side, you have  $x$  and  $y$ . You can think of this rectangle as being mapped to the circle. Your lines of constant  $r$  map to concentric circles on the

other side, and your lines of constant  $\theta$  are mapped to rays emanating from the center of the circle. Numerical grid generation is a generalization of that idea. You have a mapping, that is, a function, where you have a rectangle or square, mapped to something that has an arbitrary shape. So I set up my mapping so that I'm mapping my rectangle to whatever shape I want—the domain with the contour boundary, for instance.

Now as I set up this mapping the question is, “How do I fill in the coordinate lines on the contour-shaped domain?” Well, my mapping is made of splines, which are functions that are piecewise polynomials. It maps a square to the contour-shaped domain over which I want to compute the special function. Let's say I call the coordinates for the square domain,  $c$  and  $d$ , and the coordinates for the contour-shaped domain,  $x$  and  $y$ . In a similar fashion as the polar coordinate system, lines of constant  $c$  or  $d$  values on the square are mapped to lines (or they may look like curves) on the contour-shaped domain. The lines will cross each other to produce what looks like a net, or grid. The points of intersection are called the grid points. Each  $(c,d)$  ordered pair on the square is mapped to an  $(x,y)$  ordered pair on the contour-shaped domain. The grid generation mapping must be carefully defined so that the grid lines do not intersect adjacent lines or overlap the domain boundary.

Once I have the grid on the contour-shaped domain, I compute the special function at the grid points to obtain the plot data for the graph. So I will have a list of  $x$ ,  $y$ , and  $z$  values where  $z$  is the value of the special function at the ordered pair  $(x,y)$ .

**Tabak:** If this were the 1960s, you would stop here and publish a table of numbers, right? This is your table. But this is an adaptive table—adapted to the individual function. So in an area where the function behaves in a complicated way the table of values would cluster in that area, and then the data would spread out over areas where the function varies less?

**Saunders:** It's somewhat adaptive now, and I'm trying to make it more so. That is basically the idea. Where I have a cusp—a place where the surface comes to a sharp point at a zero—I will have

more points there so you can really see that and try to make sure that a grid point actually hits the location of the zero. Near a pole the surface may rise or decrease very quickly, so you probably need more points around there. Yes, that's the idea.

**Tabak:** OK.

**Saunders:** This concept of numerical grid generation actually comes from computational fluid dynamics. Numerical grid generation was my area of research for my Ph.D. dissertation. I studied this as a graduate researcher at NASA Langley Research Center. This technique is actually used to develop boundary fitted grids to solve partial differential equations for aerodynamic problems. For example, numerical grid generation has commonly been used to study the design of airfoils—you know, a cross section of a wing?

**Tabak:** Right.

**Saunders:** For the two-dimensional study of flow past a wing they designed a grid with an airfoil shape in the middle. The grid points are concentrated near the boundary of the airfoil. They use the grid to solve partial differential equations that model the motion of the air as the wing moves through it.

When we started looking at the problem of trying to develop accurate grids for graphing, I realized that it was actually just a numerical grid generation problem—that I could use the same techniques that I used for problems in computational fluid dynamics in this problem of graphing. This was a win-win situation for me. I was able to do more research in grid generation and also do work that helped NIST at the same time.

**Tabak:** Now you have the grid. The next step is to turn the values on the grid into a surface?

**Saunders:** I used the grid to produce a table of ordered triples  $(x,y,z)$ . So I now have a table of values that can be plotted to produce a surface.

**Tabak:** At this point in the process, we can imagine it as a three-dimensional space with a finite number of points in it, right? The points on the surface?

**Saunders:** Right. Our next step was to figure out a way to put the data into a file format that could be viewed on the Web. After doing some research and talking to people at NIST who knew something about developing Web-based graphics, we decided to use VRML (Virtual Reality Modeling Language) and later X3D (Extensible 3D). These formats are specially made for displaying and manipulating 3-D objects on the Web. We collaborated with NIST computer scientists who were able to develop routines to translate our data into the VRML and X3D file formats. These formats are recognized by special browsers and plug-ins that users can download for free. With the VRML/X3D browser the user can not only display the surface, but also perform several interactive maneuvers—rotate the surface, zoom in and out, or use any of the custom features we have included. For example, the user can change the scale of the surface in the  $x$ -,  $y$ -, or vertical direction. Scaling down close to 0 in the vertical direction yields a special type of contour plot called a density plot. And our cutting plane feature allows the user to see the intersection curves that develop when a plane moves through the surface.

**Tabak:** I had read about that. It reminds me of the way that the ancient Greeks generated their conic sections. They imagined the cone and then they would cut it with a plane to get their curve, right?

**Saunders:** Right.

**Tabak:** These software packages allow you, essentially, to connect the points and produce a surface. Now you have a surface. But these are transcendental functions so the values are approximate and the surface is a continuum, but you've calculated the surface from a finite collection of points. That's a lot of approximations. So after you've done all of this work—and I know that you have

produced many of these visualizations—how do you know that the surfaces are correct? How do you check your work?

**Saunders:** The same way that I figure out what I'm looking for. I look at all the information that I have about the function. Even though high-level math functions can be very complicated, they tend to be fairly smooth in most regions. Anomalies tend to stand out. Also, you always have an approximation; you just want to make sure that the accuracy of the approximation is acceptable. You actually have a little more freedom when it comes to a graph or visualization of a function because the level of detail that your eye can detect is limited. The number of digits needed for a precise graph of a function is usually far fewer than the number of digits of accuracy needed to use the function in calculations to solve a problem. Once you get past a certain point, adding more digits of accuracy to the data points won't give a more accurate picture to the eye. That's why my primary concern is to find out where the key features—poles, zeros, and branch cuts—are and make sure those features are presented clearly.

**Tabak:** So the finished product will look like a landscape and your software allows you to move over the landscape and look at it from certain points of view or to look at some region more closely or from further away. Is that a fair characterization?

**Saunders:** Yes, basically. Except in this case it will look like you are moving the surface. We have also put in fixed viewpoints that you can cycle through. And we color the surface two ways. One color map is designed so that the color on the surface changes with the height of the function—

**Tabak:** I caught that scheme, but I didn't understand the second scheme.

**Saunders:** The other way we color it is according to the argument of the function. These functions have complex values, and complex numbers can also be written in the form  $a + ib = re^{i\theta}$ , and



$\theta$  is the argument, also called the phase. The color at a particular surface point is then based on the argument of the function at that point. There is also a four-color scheme where the surface color identifies the quadrant in which the phase angle lies.

**Tabak:** When is this project scheduled to be completed?

**Saunders:** Very soon.

**Tabak:** Is that right?

**Saunders:** The book version is already at the publisher. They're trying to get it ready, and we want the Web site to be ready at the same time—probably within two or three months.

**Tabak:** Congratulations. It's nice that it will be ready to view when people read this interview. (*laughter*)

**Saunders:** It is being published by Cambridge University Press.

**Tabak:** This was very interesting. I especially enjoyed learning how all of these ideas come together to produce a finished product. Thank you very much for your time and your expertise.

**Saunders:** Thank you.

# CHRONOLOGY

**ca. 3000 B.C.E.**

Hieroglyphic numerals are in use in Egypt.

**ca. 2500 B.C.E.**

Construction of the Great Pyramid of Khufu takes place.

**ca. 2400 B.C.E.**

An almost complete system of positional notation is in use in Mesopotamia.

**ca. 1650 B.C.E.**

The Egyptian scribe Ahmes copies what is now known as the Ahmes (or Rhind) papyrus from an earlier version of the same document.

**ca. 585 B.C.E.**

Thales of Miletus carries out his research into geometry, marking the beginning of mathematics as a deductive science.

**ca. 540 B.C.E.**

Pythagoras of Samos establishes the Pythagorean school of philosophy.

**ca. 500 B.C.E.**

Rod numerals are in use in China.

**ca. 420 B.C.E.**

Zeno of Elea proposes his philosophical paradoxes.

**ca. 399 B.C.E.**

Socrates dies.

**ca. 360 B.C.E.**

Eudoxus, author of the method of exhaustion, carries out his research into mathematics.

**ca. 350 B.C.E.**

The Greek mathematician Menaechmus writes an important work on conic sections.

**ca. 347 B.C.E.**

Plato dies.

**332 B.C.E.**

Alexandria, Egypt, center of Greek mathematics, is established.

**ca. 300 B.C.E.**

Euclid of Alexandria writes *Elements*, one of the most influential mathematics books of all time.

**ca. 260 B.C.E.**

Aristarchus of Samos discovers a method for computing the ratio of the Earth-Moon distance to the Earth-Sun distance.

**ca. 230 B.C.E.**

Eratosthenes of Cyrene computes the circumference of Earth.

Apollonius of Perga writes *Conics*.

Archimedes of Syracuse writes *The Method*, *On the Equilibrium of Planes*, and other works.

**206 B.C.E.**

The Han dynasty is established; Chinese mathematics flourishes.

**ca. C.E. 150**

Ptolemy of Alexandria writes *Almagest*, the most influential astronomy text of antiquity.

**ca. C.E. 250**

Diophantus of Alexandria writes *Arithmetica*, an important step forward for algebra.

**ca. 320**

Pappus of Alexandria writes his *Collection*, one of the last influential Greek mathematical treatises.

**415**

The death of the Alexandrian philosopher and mathematician Hypatia marks the end of the Greek mathematical tradition.

**ca. 476**

The astronomer and mathematician Aryabhata is born; Indian mathematics flourishes.

**ca. 630**

The Hindu mathematician and astronomer Brahmagupta writes *Brahma Sphuta Siddhānta*, which contains a description of place-value notation.

**ca. 775**

Scholars in Baghdad begin to translate Hindu and Greek works into Arabic.

**ca. 830**

Mohammed ibn-Mūsā al-Khwārizmī writes *Hisāb al-jabr wa'l muqābala*, a new approach to algebra.

**833**

Al-Ma'mūn, founder of the House of Wisdom in Baghdad, Iraq, dies.

**ca. 840**

The Jainist mathematician Mahavira writes *Ganita Sara Samgraha*, an important mathematical textbook.

**1086**

An intensive survey of the wealth of England is carried out and summarized in the tables and lists of the *Domesday Book*.

**1123**

Omar Khayyām, the author of *Al-jabr w'al muqābala* and the *Rubā'i-yāt*, the last great classical Islamic mathematician, dies.

**ca. 1144**

Bhaskara II writes the *Lilavati* and the *Vija-Ganita*, two of the last great works in the classical Indian mathematical tradition.

**ca. 1202**

Leonardo of Pisa (Fibonacci), author of *Liber abaci*, arrives in Europe.

**1360**

Nicholas Oresme, a French mathematician and Roman Catholic bishop, represents distance as the area beneath a velocity line.

**1471**

The German artist Albrecht Dürer is born.

**1482**

Leonardo da Vinci begins to keep his diaries.

**ca. 1541**

Niccolò Fontana, an Italian mathematician, also known as Tartaglia, discovers a general method for factoring third-degree algebraic equations.

**1543**

Copernicus publishes *De revolutionibus*, marking the start of the Copernican revolution.

**1545**

Girolamo Cardano, an Italian mathematician and physician, publishes *Ars magna*, marking the beginning of modern algebra. Later he publishes *Liber de ludo aleae*, the first book on probability.

**1579**

François Viète, a French mathematician, publishes *Canon mathematicus*, marking the beginning of modern algebraic notation.

**1585**

The Dutch mathematician and engineer Simon Stevin publishes “La disme.”

**1609**

Johannes Kepler, author of Kepler’s laws of planetary motion, publishes *Astronomia nova*.

Galileo Galilei begins his astronomical observations.

**1621**

The English mathematician and astronomer Thomas Harriot dies. His only work, *Artis analyticae praxis*, is published in 1631.

**ca. 1630**

The French lawyer and mathematician Pierre de Fermat begins a lifetime of mathematical research. He is the first person to claim to have proved “Fermat’s last theorem.”

**1636**

Gérard (or Girard) Desargues, a French mathematician and engineer, publishes *Traité de la section perspective*, which marks the beginning of projective geometry.

**1637**

René Descartes, a French philosopher and mathematician, publishes *Discours de la méthode*, permanently changing both algebra and geometry.

**1638**

Galileo Galilei publishes *Dialogues Concerning Two New Sciences* while under arrest.

**1640**

Blaise Pascal, a French philosopher, scientist, and mathematician, publishes *Essai sur les coniques*, an extension of the work of Desargues.

**1642**

Blaise Pascal manufactures an early mechanical calculator, the Pascaline.

**1654**

Pierre de Fermat and Blaise Pascal exchange a series of letters about probability, thereby inspiring many mathematicians to study the subject.

**1655**

John Wallis, an English mathematician and clergyman, publishes *Arithmetica infinitorum*, an important work that presages calculus.

**1657**

Christiaan Huygens, a Dutch mathematician, astronomer, and physicist, publishes *De ratiociniis in ludo aleae*, a highly influential text in probability theory.

**1662**

John Graunt, an English businessman and a pioneer in statistics, publishes his research on the London Bills of Mortality.

**1673**

Gottfried Leibniz, a German philosopher and mathematician, constructs a mechanical calculator that can perform addition, subtraction, multiplication, division, and extraction of roots.

**1683**

Seki Kōwa, Japanese mathematician, discovers the theory of determinants.

**1684**

Gottfried Leibniz publishes the first paper on calculus, *Nova methodus pro maximis et minimis*.

**1687**

Isaac Newton, a British mathematician and physicist, publishes *Philosophiae naturalis principia mathematica*, beginning a new era in science.

**1693**

Edmund Halley, a British mathematician and astronomer, undertakes a statistical study of the mortality rate in Breslau, Germany.

**1698**

Thomas Savery, an English engineer and inventor, patents the first steam engine.

**1705**

Jacob Bernoulli, a Swiss mathematician, dies. His major work on probability, *Ars conjectandi*, is published in 1713.

**1712**

The first Newcomen steam engine is installed.

**1718**

Abraham de Moivre, a French mathematician, publishes *The Doctrine of Chances*, the most advanced text of the time on the theory of probability.

**1743**

The Anglo-Irish Anglican bishop and philosopher George Berkeley publishes *The Analyst*, an attack on the new mathematics pioneered by Isaac Newton and Gottfried Leibniz.

The French mathematician and philosopher Jean Le Rond d'Alembert begins work on the *Encyclopédie*, one of the great works of the Enlightenment.

**1748**

Leonhard Euler, a Swiss mathematician, publishes his *Introductio*.

**1749**

The French mathematician and scientist Georges-Louis Leclerc, comte de Buffon publishes the first volume of *Histoire naturelle*.

**1750**

Gabriel Cramer, a Swiss mathematician, publishes "Cramer's rule," a procedure for solving systems of linear equations.

**1760**

Daniel Bernoulli, a Swiss mathematician and scientist, publishes his probabilistic analysis of the risks and benefits of variolation against smallpox.

**1761**

Thomas Bayes, an English theologian and mathematician, dies. His "Essay Towards Solving a Problem in the Doctrine of Chances" is published two years later.

The English scientist Joseph Black proposes the idea of latent heat.

**1769**

James Watt obtains his first steam engine patent.



**1781**

William Herschel, a German-born British musician and astronomer, discovers Uranus.

**1789**

Unrest in France culminates in the French Revolution.

**1793**

The Reign of Terror, a period of brutal, state-sanctioned repression, begins in France.

**1794**

The French mathematician Adrien-Marie Legendre (or Le Gendre) publishes his *Éléments de géométrie*, a text that influences mathematics education for decades.

Antoine-Laurent Lavoisier, a French scientist and discoverer of the law of conservation of mass, is executed by the French government.

**1798**

Benjamin Thompson (Count Rumford), a British physicist, proposes the equivalence of heat and work.

**1799**

Napoléon seizes control of the French government.

Caspar Wessel, a Norwegian mathematician and surveyor, publishes the first geometric representation of the complex numbers.

**1801**

Carl Friedrich Gauss, a German mathematician, publishes *Disquisitiones arithmeticae*.

**1805**

Adrien-Marie Legendre, a French mathematician, publishes *Nouvelles méthodes pour la détermination des orbites des comètes*, which contains the first description of the method of least squares.

**1806**

Jean-Robert Argand, a French bookkeeper, accountant, and mathematician, develops the Argand diagram to represent complex numbers.

**1812**

Pierre-Simon Laplace, a French mathematician, publishes *Théorie analytique des probabilités*, the most influential 19th-century work on the theory of probability.

**1815**

Napoléon suffers final defeat at the battle of Waterloo.

Jean-Victor Poncelet, a French mathematician and the “father of projective geometry,” publishes *Traité des propriétés projectives des figures*.

**1824**

The French engineer Sadi Carnot publishes *Réflexions sur la puissance motrice du feu*, wherein he describes the Carnot engine.

Niels Henrik Abel, a Norwegian mathematician, publishes his proof of the impossibility of algebraically solving a general fifth-degree equation.

**1826**

Nikolay Ivanovich Lobachevsky, a Russian mathematician and “the Copernicus of geometry,” announces his theory of non-Euclidean geometry.

**1828**

Robert Brown, a Scottish botanist, publishes the first description of Brownian motion in “A Brief Account of Microscopical Observations.”

**1830**

Charles Babbage, a British mathematician and inventor, begins work on his analytical engine, the first attempt at a modern computer.

**1832**

János Bolyai, a Hungarian mathematician, publishes *Absolute Science of Space*.

The French mathematician Évariste Galois is killed in a duel.

**1843**

James Prescott Joule publishes his measurement of the mechanical equivalent of heat.

**1846**

The planet Neptune is discovered by the French mathematician Urbain-Jean-Joseph Le Verrier from a mathematical analysis of the orbit of Uranus.

**1847**

Georg Christian von Staudt publishes *Geometrie der Lage*, which shows that projective geometry can be expressed without any concept of length.

**1848**

Bernhard Bolzano, a Czech mathematician and theologian, dies. His study of infinite sets, *Paradoxien des Unendlichen*, is first published in 1851.

**1850**

Rudolph Clausius, a German mathematician and physicist, publishes his first paper on the theory of heat.

**1851**

William Thomson (Lord Kelvin), a British scientist, publishes "On the Dynamical Theory of Heat."

**1854**

George Boole, a British mathematician, publishes *Laws of Thought*. The mathematics contained therein makes possible the later design of computer logic circuits.

The German mathematician Bernhard Riemann gives the historic lecture "On the Hypotheses That Form the Foundations of Geometry." The ideas therein play an integral part in the theory of relativity.

**1855**

John Snow, a British physician, publishes "On the Mode of Communication of Cholera," the first successful epidemiological study of a disease.

**1859**

James Clerk Maxwell, a British physicist, proposes a probabilistic model for the distribution of molecular velocities in a gas.

Charles Darwin, a British biologist, publishes *On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection*.

**1861**

Karl Weierstrass creates a continuous nowhere differentiable function.

Openmirrors.com

**1866**

The Austrian biologist and monk Gregor Mendel publishes his ideas on the theory of heredity in “Versuche über Pflanzenhybriden.”

**1872**

The German mathematician Felix Klein announces his Erlanger Programm, an attempt to categorize all geometries with the use of group theory.

Lord Kelvin (William Thomson) develops an early analog computer to predict tides.

Richard Dedekind, a German mathematician, rigorously establishes the connection between real numbers and the real number line.

**1874**

Georg Cantor, a German mathematician, publishes “Über eine Eigenschaft des Inbegriffes aller reellen algebraischen Zahlen,” a pioneering paper that shows that all infinite sets are not the same size.

**1890**

The Hollerith tabulator, an important innovation in calculating machines, is installed at the United States Census for use in the 1890 census.

Giuseppe Peano publishes his example of a space-filling curve.

**1894**

Oliver Heaviside describes his operational calculus in his text *Electromagnetic Theory*.

**1895**

Henri Poincaré publishes *Analysis situs*, a landmark paper in the history of topology, in which he introduces a number of ideas that would occupy the attention of mathematicians for generations.

**1898**

Émile Borel begins to develop a theory of measure of abstract sets that takes into account the topology of the sets on which the measure is defined.

**1899**

The German mathematician David Hilbert publishes the definitive axiomatic treatment of Euclidean geometry.

**1900**

David Hilbert announces his list of mathematics problems for the 20th century.

The Russian mathematician Andrey Andreyevich Markov begins his research into the theory of probability.

**1901**

Henri-Léon Lebesgue, a French mathematician, develops his theory of integration.

**1905**

Ernst Zermelo, a German mathematician, undertakes the task of axiomatizing set theory.

Albert Einstein, a German-born American physicist, begins to publish his discoveries in physics.

**1906**

Marian Smoluchowski, a Polish scientist, publishes his insights into Brownian motion.

**1908**

The Hardy-Weinberg law, containing ideas fundamental to population genetics, is published.

**1910**

Bertrand Russell, a British logician and philosopher, and Alfred North Whitehead, a British mathematician and philosopher, publish *Principia mathematica*, an important work on the foundations of mathematics.

**1913**

Luitzen E. J. Brouwer publishes his recursive definition of the concept of dimension.

**1914**

Felix Hausdorff publishes *Grundzüge der Mengenlehre*.

**1915**

Wacław Sierpiński publishes his description of the now-famous curve called the Sierpiński gasket.

**1917**

Vladimir Ilyich Lenin leads a revolution that results in the founding of the Union of Soviet Socialist Republics.

**1918**

World War I ends.

The German mathematician Emmy Noether presents her ideas on the roles of symmetries in physics.

**1920**

Zygmunt Janiszewski, founder of the Polish school of topology, dies.

**1923**

Stefan Banach begins to develop the theory of Banach spaces.

Karl Menger publishes his first paper on dimension theory.

**1924**

Pavel Samuilovich Urysohn dies in a swimming accident at the age of 25 after making several important contributions to topology.

**1928**

Maurice Frechet publishes his *Les espaces abstraits et leur théorie considérée comme introduction à l'analyse générale*, which places topological concepts at the foundation of the field of analysis.

**1929**

Andrey Nikolayevich Kolmogorov, a Russian mathematician, publishes *General Theory of Measure and Probability Theory*, establishing the theory of probability on a firm axiomatic basis for the first time.

**1930**

Ronald Aylmer Fisher, a British geneticist and statistician, publishes *Genetical Theory of Natural Selection*, an important early attempt to express the theory of natural selection in mathematical language.

**1931**

Kurt Gödel, an Austrian-born American mathematician, publishes his incompleteness proof.

The Differential Analyzer, an important development in analog computers, is developed at Massachusetts Institute of Technology.

**1933**

Karl Pearson, a British innovator in statistics, retires from University College, London.

Kazimierz Kuratowski publishes the first volume of *Topologie*, which extends the boundaries of set theoretic topology (still an important text).

**1935**

George Horace Gallup, a U.S. statistician, founds the American Institute of Public Opinion.

**1937**

The British mathematician Alan Turing publishes his insights on the limits of computability.

Topologist and teacher Robert Lee Moore begins serving as president of the American Mathematical Society.

**1939**

World War II begins.

William Edwards Deming joins the United States Census Bureau.

The Nicolas Bourbaki group publishes the first volume of its *Éléments de mathématique*.

Sergey Sobolev elected to the USSR Academy of Sciences after publishing a long series of papers describing a generalization of the concept of function and a generalization of the concept of derivative. His work forms the foundation for a new branch of analysis.

**1941**

Witold Hurewicz and Henry Wallman publish their classic text *Dimension Theory*.

**1945**

Samuel Eilenberg and Saunders Mac Lane found the discipline of category theory.

**1946**

The Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator (ENIAC) computer begins operation at the University of Pennsylvania.

**1948**

While working at Bell Telephone Labs in the United States, Claude Shannon publishes “A Mathematical Theory of Communication,” marking the beginning of the Information Age.

**1951**

The Universal Automatic Computer (UNIVAC I) is installed at U.S. Bureau of the Census.

**1954**

FORMula TRANslator (FORTRAN), one of the first high-level computer languages, is introduced.

**1956**

The American Walter Shewhart, an innovator in the field of quality control, retires from Bell Telephone Laboratories.

**1957**

Olga Oleinik publishes “Discontinuous Solutions to Nonlinear Differential Equations,” a milestone in mathematical physics.



**1965**

Andrey Nikolayevich Kolmogorov establishes the branch of mathematics now known as Kolmogorov complexity.

**1972**

Amid much fanfare, the French mathematician and philosopher René Thom establishes a new field of mathematics called catastrophe theory.

**1973**

The C computer language, developed at Bell Laboratories, is essentially completed.

**1975**

The French geophysicist Jean Morlet helps develop a new kind of analysis based on what he calls “wavelets.”

**1980**

Kiiti Morita, the founder of the Japanese school of topology, publishes a paper that further extends the concept of dimension to general topological spaces.

**1982**

Benoît Mandelbrot publishes his highly influential *The Fractal Geometry of Nature*.

**1989**

The Belgian mathematician Ingrid Daubechies develops what has become the mathematical foundation for today’s wavelet research.

**1995**

The British mathematician Andrew Wiles publishes the first proof of Fermat’s last theorem.

JAVA computer language is introduced commercially by Sun Microsystems.

**1997**

René Thom declares the mathematical field of catastrophe theory “dead.”

**2002**

*Experimental Mathematics* celebrates its 10th anniversary. It is a refereed journal dedicated to the experimental aspects of mathematical research.

Manindra Agrawal, Neeraj Kayal, and Nitin Saxena create a brief, elegant algorithm to test whether a number is prime, thereby solving an important centuries-old problem.

**2003**

Grigory Perelman produces the first complete proof of the Poincaré conjecture, a statement about some of the most fundamental properties of three-dimensional shapes.

**2007**

The international financial system, heavily dependent on so-called sophisticated mathematical models, finds itself on the edge of collapse, calling into question the value of the mathematical models.

**2008**

Henri Cartan, one of the founding members of the Nicolas Bourbaki group, dies at the age of 104.

# GLOSSARY

**algebra** (1) a mathematical system that is a generalization of arithmetic, in which letters or other symbols are used to represent numbers; (2) the study of the formal relations between symbols belonging to sets on which one or more operations has been defined

**algebraic equation** an equation of the form  $a_n x^n + a_{n-1} x^{n-1} + \dots + a_1 x + a_0 = 0$  where  $n$  can represent any natural number,  $x$  represents the variable raised to the power indicated, and  $a_j$ , which (in this book) always represents a rational number, is the coefficient by which  $x^j$  is multiplied

**algorithm** a formula or procedure used to solve a mathematical problem

**analytic geometry** the branch of mathematics that studies geometry via algebraic methods and coordinate systems

**axiom** a statement accepted as true that serves as a basis for deductive reasoning

**characteristic equation** an algebraic equation associated with the determinant of a given matrix with the additional property that the matrix acts as a root of the equation

**coefficient** a number or symbol representing a number used to multiply a variable

**combinatorics** the branch of mathematics concerned with the selection of elements from finite sets and the operations that are performed with those sets

**commensurable** evenly divisible by a common measure. Two lengths (or numbers representing those lengths) are commensurable when they are evenly divisible by a common unit

**complex number** any number of the form  $a + bi$  where  $a$  and  $b$  are real numbers and  $i$  has the property that  $i^2 = -1$

**composite number** a whole number greater than 1 that is not prime

**conic section** any member of the family of curves obtained from the intersection of a double cone and a plane

**coordinate system** a method of establishing a one-to-one correspondence between points in space and sets of numbers

**deduction** a conclusion obtained by logically reasoning from general principles to particular statements

**degree of an equation** for an algebraic equation of one variable, the largest exponent appearing in the equation

**determinant** a particular function defined on the set of square matrices. The value of the determinant is a real or complex number

**determinant equation** an equation or system of equations for which there exists a unique solution

**eigenvalue** the root of a characteristic equation

**ellipse** a closed curve formed by the intersection of a right circular cone and a plane

**field** a set of numbers with the property that however two numbers are combined via the operations of addition, subtraction, multiplication, and division (except by 0), the result is another number in the set

**fifth-degree equation** an algebraic equation in which the highest exponent appearing in the equation is 5

**fourth-degree equation** an algebraic equation in which the highest exponent appearing in the equation is 4

**fundamental principle of analytic geometry** the observation that under fairly general conditions one equation in two variables defines a curve

**fundamental principle of solid analytic geometry** the observation that under fairly general conditions one equation in three variables defines a surface

**fundamental theorem of algebra** the statement that any polynomial of degree  $n$  has  $n$  roots

**geometric algebra** a method of expressing ideas usually associated with algebra via the concepts and techniques of Euclidean geometry

**group** a set of objects together with an operation analogous to multiplication such that (1) the “product” of any two elements in the set is an element in the set; (2) the operation is associative, that is, for any three elements,  $a$ ,  $b$ , and  $c$  in the group  $(ab)c = a(bc)$ ; (3) there is an element in the set, usually denoted with the letter  $e$ , such that  $ea = ae = a$  where  $a$  is any element in the set; and (4) every element in the set has an inverse, so that if  $a$  is an element in the set, there is an element called  $a^{-1}$  such that  $aa^{-1} = e$

**group theory** the branch of mathematics devoted to the study of groups

**hyperbola** a curve composed of the intersection of a plane and both parts of a double, right circular cone

**identity** the element, usually denoted with the letter  $e$ , in a group with the property that if  $g$  is any element in the group, then  $eg = ge = g$

**indeterminate equation** an equation or set of equations for which there exist infinitely many solutions

**integer** any whole number

**invariant** a property of a mathematical system that remains unchanged when the elements that comprise the system are transformed according to some rule. Whether a property is invariant or not depends on the transformation rule. The discovery and exploitation of invariants is an important part of mathematical research

**irrational number** any real number that cannot be expressed as  $a/b$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are integers and  $b$  is not 0

**linear equation** an algebraic equation in which every term is a number or a variable of degree 1 multiplied by a number

**matrix** a rectangular array or table of numbers or other quantities

**natural number** the number 1, or any number obtained by adding 1 to itself sufficiently many times

**one-to-one correspondence** the pairing of elements between two sets,  $A$  and  $B$ , such that each element of  $A$  is paired with a unique element of  $B$  and to each element of  $B$  is paired a unique element of  $A$

**parabola** the curve formed by the intersection of a right circular cone and a plane that is parallel to a line that generates the cone

**polynomial** a mathematical expression consisting of the sum of terms of the form  $ax^n$ , where  $a$  represents a number,  $x$  represents a variable, and  $n$  represents a nonnegative integer

**prime number** a natural number greater than 1 that is—among the set of all natural numbers—evenly divisible only by itself and 1

**Pythagorean theorem** the statement that for a right triangle the square of the length of the hypotenuse equals the sum of the squares of the lengths of the remaining sides

**Pythagorean triple** three numbers each of which is a natural number such that the sum of the squares of the two smaller numbers equals the square of the largest number.

**quadratic equation** See SECOND-DEGREE EQUATION.

**quadratic formula** a mathematical formula for computing the roots of any second-degree algebraic equation by using the coefficients that appear in the equation

**rational number** any number of the form  $a/b$ , where  $a$  and  $b$  are integers and  $b$  is not 0

**real number** any rational number or any number that can be approximated to an arbitrarily high degree of accuracy by a rational number

**rhetorical algebra** algebra that is expressed in words only, without specialized algebraic symbols

**ring** a set of objects on which two operations, often called addition and multiplication, are defined. Under addition, the set forms a commutative GROUP. Under multiplication, the elements in the set satisfy the following two properties: (1) the product of any two elements in the set is another element in the set, and (2) multiplication is associative. Addition and multiplication are related through the distributive law:  $a \times (b + c) = a \times b + a \times c$ . Sometimes other conditions are imposed in addition to these.

**root** for any algebraic equation any number that satisfies the equation

**second-degree equation** an algebraic equation in which the highest exponent appearing in the equation is 2

**sparse matrix** a matrix in which most of the coefficients appearing in the matrix are zero

**spectral theory** the study that seeks to relate the properties of a matrix to the properties of its eigenvalues

**syllogism** a type of formal logical argument described in detail by Aristotle in the collection of his writings known as *The Organon*

**symmetry transformation** a change, such as a rotation or reflection, of a geometric or physical object with the property that the spatial configuration of the object is the same before and after the transformation

**syncopated algebra** a method of expressing algebra that uses some abbreviations but does not employ a fully symbolic system of algebraic notation

**third-degree equation** an algebraic equation in which the highest exponent appearing in the equation is 3

**unit fraction** a fraction of the form  $1/a$ , where  $a$  is any integer except zero

# FURTHER RESOURCES

## MODERN WORKS

Adler, Irving. *Thinking Machines, a Layman's Introduction to Logic, Boolean Algebra, and Computers*. New York: John Day, 1961. This old book is still the best nontechnical introduction to computer arithmetic. It begins with fingers and ends with Boolean logic circuits.

Bashmakova, Izabella G. *The Beginnings and Evolution of Algebra*. Washington, D.C.: Mathematical Association of America, 2000. Aimed at older high school students, this is a detailed look at algebra from the age of Mesopotamia to the end of the 19th century. It presupposes a strong background in high school-level algebra.

Boyer, Carl B., and Uta C. Merzbach. *A History of Mathematics*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1991. Boyer was one of the preeminent mathematics historians of the 20th century. This work contains much interesting biographical information. The mathematical information assumes a fairly strong background.

Bunt, Lucas Nicolaas Hendrik, Phillip S. Jones, Jack D. Bedient. *The Historical Roots of Elementary Mathematics*. Englewood Cliffs, N.J.: Prentice-Hall, 1976. A highly detailed examination—complete with numerous exercises—of how ancient cultures added, subtracted, divided, multiplied, and reasoned.

Carroll, L. *Symbolic Logic and The Game of Logic*. New York: Dover Publications, 1958. Better known as the author of Alice in Wonderland, Lewis Carroll was also an accomplished mathematician. The language in these two books (bound as one) is old-fashioned but very accessible.

Courant, Richard, and Herbert Robbins. *What Is Mathematics? An Elementary Approach to Ideas and Mathematics*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1941. A classic and exhaustive answer to the



question posed in the title. Courant was an influential 20th-century mathematician.

Danzig, Tobias. *Number, the Language of Science*. New York: Macmillan, 1954. First published in 1930, this book is painfully elitist; the author's many prejudices are on display in every chapter. Yet it is one of the best nontechnical histories of the concept of number ever written. Apparently it was also Albert Einstein's favorite book on the history of mathematics.

Dewdney, Alexander K. *200% of Nothing: An Eye-Opening Tour through the Twists and Turns of Math Abuse and Innumeracy*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1993. A critical look at how mathematical reasoning has been abused to distort truth.

Eastaway, Robert, and Jeremy Wyndham. *Why Do Buses Come in Threes? The Hidden Mathematics of Everyday Life*. New York: John Wiley & Sons, 1998. Nineteen lighthearted essays on the mathematics underlying everything from luck to scheduling problems.

Eves, Howard. *An Introduction to the History of Mathematics*. New York: Holt, Rinehart & Winston, 1953. This well-written history of mathematics places special emphasis on early mathematics. It is unusual because the history is accompanied by numerous mathematical problems. (The solutions are in the back of the book.)

Freudenthal, Hans. *Mathematics Observed*. New York: McGraw-Hill, 1967. A collection of seven survey articles about math topics from computability to geometry to physics (some more technical than others).

Gardner, Martin. *The Colossal Book of Mathematics*. New York: Norton, 2001. Martin Gardner had a gift for seeing things mathematically. This "colossal" book contains sections on geometry, algebra, probability, logic, and more.

———. *Logic Machines and Diagrams*. Chicago: University of Chicago Press, 1982. An excellent book on logic and its uses in computers.

Guillen, Michael. *Bridges to Infinity: The Human Side of Mathematics*. Los Angeles: Jeremy P. Tarcher, 1983. This book consists of

an engaging nontechnical set of essays on mathematical topics, including non-Euclidean geometry, transfinite numbers, and catastrophe theory.

Heath, Thomas L. *A History of Greek Mathematics*. New York: Dover Publications, 1981. First published early in the 20th century and reprinted numerous times, this book is still one of the main references on the subject.

Hoffman, Paul. *Archimedes' Revenge: The Joys and Perils of Mathematics*. New York: Ballantine, 1989. A relaxed, sometimes silly look at an interesting and diverse set of math problems ranging from prime numbers and cryptography to Turing machines and the mathematics of democratic processes.

Hogben, L. *Mathematics for the Million*. New York: W. W. Norton, 1968. This is a classic text that has been in print for many decades. Written by a creative scientist, it reveals a view of mathematics, its history, and its applications that is both challenging and entertaining. Highly recommended.

Jacquette, D. *On Boole*. Belmont, Calif.: Wadsworth/Thompson Learning, 2002. This book gives a good overview of Aristotelian syllogisms, Boolean algebra, and the uses of Boolean algebra in the design of computer logic circuits.

Joseph, George G. *The Crest of the Peacock: The Non-European Roots of Mathematics*. Princeton, N.J.: Princeton University Press, 1991. One of the best of a new crop of books devoted to this important topic.

Kline, Morris. *Mathematics and the Physical World*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell, 1959. The history of mathematics as it relates to the history of science, and vice versa.

———. *Mathematics for the Nonmathematician*. New York: Dover Publications, 1985. An articulate, not very technical overview of many important mathematical ideas.

———. *Mathematics in Western Culture*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1953. An excellent overview of the development of

Western mathematics in its cultural context, this book is aimed at an audience with a firm grasp of high school-level mathematics.

McLeish, John. *Number*. New York: Fawcett Columbine, 1992. A history of the concept of number from Mesopotamia to modern times.

Pappas, Theoni. *The Joy of Mathematics*. San Carlos, Calif.: World Wide/Tetra, 1986. Aimed at a younger audience, this work searches for interesting applications of mathematics in the world around us.

Pierce, John R. *An Introduction to Information Theory: Symbols, Signals and Noise*. New York: Dover Publications, 1961. Despite the sound of the title, this is not a textbook. Among other topics, Pierce, formerly of Bell Laboratories, describes some of the mathematics involved in encoding numbers and text for digital transmission or storage—a lucid introduction to the topics of information and algebraic coding theory.

Reid, Constance. *From Zero to Infinity: What Makes Numbers Interesting*. New York: Thomas Y. Crowell, 1960. A well-written overview of numbers and the algebra that stimulated their development.

Schiffer, M. and Leon Bowden. *The Role of Mathematics in Science*. Washington, D.C.: Mathematical Association of America, 1984. The first few chapters of this book, ostensibly written for high school students, will be accessible to many students; the last few chapters will find a much narrower audience.

Smith, David E., and Yoshio Mikami. *A History of Japanese Mathematics*. Chicago: Open Court, 1914. Copies of this book are still around, and it is frequently quoted. The first half is an informative nontechnical survey. The second half is written more for the expert.

Stewart, Ian. *From Here to Infinity*. New York: Oxford University Press, 1996. A well-written, very readable overview of several important contemporary ideas in geometry, algebra, computability, chaos, and mathematics in nature.

Swetz, Frank J., editor. *From Five Fingers to Infinity: A Journey through the History of Mathematics*. Chicago: Open Court, 1994.

This is a fascinating, though not especially focused, look at the history of mathematics. Highly recommended.

Swetz, Frank. *Sea Island Mathematical Manual: Surveying and Mathematics in Ancient China*. University Park: Pennsylvania State University Press, 1992. The book contains many ancient problems in mathematics and measurement and illustrates how problems in measurement often inspired the development of geometric ideas and techniques.

Tabak, John. *Numbers: Computers, Philosophers, and the Search for Meaning*. New York: Facts On File, 2004. More information about how the concept of number and ideas about the nature of algebra evolved together.

Thomas, David A. *Math Projects for Young Scientists*. New York: Franklin Watts, 1988. This project-oriented text is an introduction to several historically important geometry problems.

Yaglom, Isaac M. *Geometric Transformations*, translated by Allen Shields. New York: Random House, 1962. Aimed at high school students, this is a very sophisticated treatment of “simple” geometry and an excellent introduction to higher mathematics. It is also an excellent introduction to the concept of invariance.

Zippin, Leo. *The Uses of Infinity*. New York: Random House, 1962. Contains lots of equations—perhaps too many for the uninitiated—but none of the equations is very difficult. The book is worth the effort required to read it.

## ORIGINAL SOURCES

It can sometimes deepen our appreciation of an important mathematical discovery to read the discoverer’s own description. Often this is not possible, because the description is too technical. Fortunately there are exceptions. Sometimes the discovery is accessible because the idea does not require a lot of technical background to appreciate it. Sometimes the discoverer writes a nontechnical account of the technical idea that she or he has discovered. Here are some classic papers:

Ahmes. *The Rhind Mathematical Papyrus: Free Translation, Commentary, and Selected Photographs, Transcription, Literal Translations*, translated by Arnold B. Chace. Reston, Va.: National Council of Teachers of Mathematics, 1979. This is a translation of the biggest and best of extant Egyptian mathematical texts, the Rhind papyrus (also known as the Ahmes papyrus). It provides insight into the types of problems and methods of solution known to one of humanity's oldest cultures.

Al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā. *Robert of Chester's Latin translation of the Algebra of al-Khwārizmī, with an introduction, critical notes, and an English version of Louis Charles Karpinski*. Norwood, Mass.: Norwood Press, 1915. Various versions of this important original work are still around. It can be found in academic libraries and on the Internet. The algebra is simple, but it is still hard to read because of the absence of algebraic symbols. Al-Khwārizmī's book changed history.

Boole, George. *Mathematical Analysis of Logic*. In *The World of Mathematics*, vol. 3, edited by James R. Newman. New York: Dover Publications, 1956. This is a nontechnical excerpt from one of Boole's most famous works. Although there is no "Boolean algebra" in this article, it contains Boole's own explanation for what he hoped to gain from studying the laws of thought.

Brahmagupta and Bhascara. *Algebra, with Arithmetic and Mensuration*. Translated by Henry Colebrook. London: John Murray, 1819. Although it was first published almost 200 years ago, copies of this book can be found in most academic libraries, and it is also available on the Internet. It is interesting to see these great minds struggle to create a new way of thinking.

Descartes, René. *The Geometry*. In *The World of Mathematics*, vol. 1, edited by James Newman. New York: Dover Publications, 1956. This is a readable translation of an excerpt from Descartes's own revolutionary work *La Géométrie*.

Euclid. *Elements*. Translated by Sir Thomas L. Heath. *Great Books of the Western World*. Vol. 11. Chicago: Encyclopaedia Britannica, 1952. See especially book I for Euclid's own exposition of the axiomatic method, and read some of the early propositions in this

volume to see how the Greeks investigated mathematics without equations.

Galilei, Galileo. *Dialogues Concerning Two New Sciences*. Translated by Henry Crew and Alfonso de Salvio. New York: Dover Publications, 1954. An interesting literary work as well as a pioneering physics text. Many regard the publication of this text as the beginning of the modern scientific tradition. And in it one can find Galileo seeking to use algebraic language.

Hardy, Godfrey H. *A Mathematician's Apology*. Cambridge, England: Cambridge University Press, 1940. Hardy was an excellent mathematician and a good writer. In this oft-quoted and very brief book Hardy seeks to explain and sometimes justify his life as a mathematician.

Keyser, Cassius J. *The Group Concept*. In *The World of Mathematics*, vol. 4, edited by James R. Newman. New York: Dover Publications, 1956. Keyser was a successful 20th-century American mathematician. The language in this article is stilted and old-fashioned, but look past matters of style to read his beautiful description of geometric “shape” as that property that is invariant under a group of similarity transformations.

*Mathematics: Its Content, Methods, and Meaning*. Vols. 1 and 3, edited by A. D. Aleksandrov, A. N. Kolmogorov, and M. A. Lavrent'ev, and translated by S. H. Gould and T. Bartha. Mineola, N.Y.: Dover Publications, 1999. This three-volume set, now available as a single enormous volume, consists of a collection of survey articles written for the well-informed layperson by some of the great mathematicians of the 20th century. Chapters 3 and 4 in volume 1 are written by the Russian mathematician B. N. Delone and discuss analytic geometry and the theory of algebraic equations. Chapter 16, which is written by the Russian mathematician D. K. Faddeev discusses linear algebra. Highly recommended.

Mikami, Yoshio. *The Development of Mathematics in China and Japan*. New York: Chelsea Publishing, 1913. This book can still be found in most academic libraries and because it is now in the public domain it is freely available on the Web. It is a well-written book about an important topic.

Poincaré, Henri. *Mathematical Creation*. In *The World of Mathematics*, vol. 4, edited by James R. Newman. New York: Dover Publications, 1956. Poincaré was one of history's most successful mathematicians. In particular, he made a number of important contributions to group theory, mathematical physics, topology, and philosophy. He also liked to write popular articles about mathematics. This is one of them.

Russell, Bertrand. *Mathematics and the Metaphysicians*. In *The World of Mathematics*. Vol. 3, edited by James Newman. New York: Dover Publications, 1956. An introduction to the philosophical ideas upon which mathematics is founded written by a major contributor to this field.

## INTERNET RESOURCES

Mathematical ideas are often subtle and expressed in an unfamiliar vocabulary. Without long periods of quiet reflection, mathematical concepts are sometimes difficult to appreciate. This is exactly the type of environment one does not usually find on the Web. To develop a real appreciation for mathematical thought, books are better. That said, the following Web sites are some good resources.

Eric Weisstein's World of Mathematics. Available online. URL: <http://mathworld.wolfram.com/>. Accessed January 15, 2010. This site has brief overviews of a great many topics in mathematics. The level of presentation varies substantially from topic to topic.

Fife, Earl, and Larry Husch. Math Archives. "History of Mathematics." Available online. URL: <http://archives.math.utk.edu/topics/history.html>. Accessed January 15, 2010. Information on mathematics, mathematicians, and mathematical organizations.

Gangolli, Ramesh. *Asian Contributions to Mathematics*. Available online. URL: <http://www.pps.k12.or.us/depts-c/mc-me/be-as-ma.pdf>. Accessed January 15, 2010. As its name implies, this well-written online book focuses on the history of mathematics in Asia and its effect on the world history of mathematics. It also includes

information on the work of Asian Americans, a welcome contribution to the field.

Heinlow, Lance, and Karen Pagel. "Math History." Online Resource. Available online. URL: <http://or.amatyc.org>. Accessed January 15, 2010. Created under the auspices of the American Mathematical Association of Two-Year Colleges, this site is a very extensive collection of links to mathematical and math-related topics.

Howard, Mike. *Introduction to Crystallography and Mineral Crystal Systems*. Available online. URL: <http://www.rockhounds.com/rockshop/xtal/>. Accessed January 15, 2010. The author has designed a nice introduction to the use of group theory in the study of crystals through an interesting mix of geometry, algebra, and mineralogy.

The Math Forum @ Drexel. The Math Forum Student Center. Available online. URL: <http://mathforum.org/students/>. Accessed January 15, 2010. Probably the best Web site for information about the kinds of mathematics that students encounter in their school-related studies. You will find interesting and challenging problems and solutions for students in grades K-12 as well as a fair amount of college-level information.

O'Connor, John L., and Edmund F. Robertson. The MacTutor History of Mathematics Archive. Available online. URL: <http://www.gap.dcs.st-and.ac.uk/~history/index.html>. Accessed January 15, 2010. This is a valuable resource for anyone interested in learning more about the history of mathematics. It contains an extraordinary collection of biographies of mathematicians in different cultures and times. In addition it provides information about the historical development of certain key mathematical ideas.

## PERIODICALS

### +Plus

URL: <http://pass.maths.org.uk>

A site with numerous interesting articles about all aspects of high school math. They send an e-mail every few weeks to their subscribers to keep them informed about new articles at the site.



**Parabola: A Mathematics Magazine for Secondary Students**

Australian Mathematics Trust

University of Canberra

ACT 2601

Australia

Published twice a year by the Australian Mathematics Trust in association with the University of New South Wales, *Parabola* is a source of short high-quality articles on many aspects of mathematics. Some back issues are also available free online. See URL: <http://www.maths.unsw.edu.au/Parabola/index.html>.

***Scientific American***

415 Madison Avenue

New York, NY 10017

A serious and widely read monthly magazine, *Scientific American* regularly carries high-quality articles on mathematics and mathematically intensive branches of science. This is the one “popular” source of high-quality mathematical information that you will find at a newsstand.

# INDEX

Page numbers in *italic* indicate illustrations;  
page numbers followed by *c* indicate chronology entries.

## A

- Abel, Niels Henrik 104–106, 201c  
 Abramowitz, Milton 182–184  
*Absolute Science of Space* (Bolyai) 201c  
 abstract algebra 123. *See also* algebraic structures  
 abstract groups 122  
 abstract notation 3–4  
 abstract reasoning 23  
 Académie des Sciences 106–108, 154  
 accuracy, data and graph 185–186  
 adaptive coordinate systems 176–177, 178  
 addition  
   commutative property 167  
   and distributive law 27  
   of integers and polynomials 167, 168  
   matrix 160  
   of natural numbers 110  
   and unit fractions 11  
 Agrawal, Manindra 209c  
 Ahmes 193c  
 Ahmes papyrus 10, 11, 193c  
 airfoils 189  
 Airy functions 183, 184, 186–187  
 Alexander III the Great (king of Macedonia) 125  
 Alexandria, Egypt 26, 31, 194c  
*Algebra* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 algebra, fundamental theorem of 77–82  
 algebraic equations 58–82  
   and algebra in science 67–68  
   algorithms in 61–66, 68  
   degree of 56, 72, 104  
   and fundamental theorem of algebra 77–82  
   and geometry of conic sections 90–92  
   Girad's studies 75–77  
   Harriot's studies 73–75  
   and number system 56  
   and permutation groups 119  
   and polynomials 81  
   roots for 106  
   splitting fields for 114–115  
   for syllogisms 135  
   theory of 153  
   Viète's studies 68–73  
 algebraic identities 41  
 algebraic notation. *See also* symbolic language  
   Brahmagupta's 38–39  
   Descartes's 86  
   and determinants 146  
   for indeterminate equations 7–9  
   Mesopotamian problems in 3  
   in physics and analysis 100, 101  
   rhetorical algebra v. 13  
 algebraic structures 114–123  
   and algorithms for computers 172–178  
   Bourbaki's studies 169–172  
   defined 119  
   determinants 148–157  
   matrices 157–165  
   of objects 142  
   permutation groups 118–123  
   rings 165–169  
   splitting fields 114–115, 119  
   symmetry groups 115–118  
 Alembert, Jean le Rond d' 149–151, 199c  
*algorism/algorismi* 49  
 algorithm(s) 179–180  
   in algebra xviii  
   Brahmagupta's 40  
   for computers 172–178  
   Diophantus's 33  
   fifth-degree equations 104, 105  
   fifth-degree polynomials 102  
   fourth-degree equations 6, 65–66, 68, 105  
   and al-Khwārizmī 49  
   Mesopotamian 3–6  
   and permutation groups 119  
   proofs of 14  
   recursion 8, 9  
   Renaissance mathematicians' 58–59, 61–66, 68

- for second-degree equations 5–6
  - for third-degree equations 6, 61–66, 105
  - Al-jabr w'al muqābala* (Khayyám) 54, 195c
  - Almagest* (Ptolemy) 194c
  - American Institute of Public Opinion 206c
  - American Mathematical Society 206c
  - al-Am n 47
  - analysis 99–101
  - Analysis situs* (Poincaré) 203c
  - Analyst, The* (Berkeley) 199c
  - analytic geometry
    - Descartes studies 85–92
    - and Fermat's Last Theorem 95–96
    - Fermat's studies 92–94, 96–97
    - fundamental principle of 91–92, 94, 98
    - and multiplication 88, 89
    - and polar coordinates 98, 99
    - symbolic language for 97–101
  - AND-gates 140–141
  - AND operators 131–132, 140, 141
  - Andronicus of Rhodes 127
  - angles, trisection of 29, 29, 30, 73, 102
  - Apollonius of Perga 34, 83, 84, 90, 94, 194c
  - applications of mathematics, Greek view 18–19
  - approximations
    - of functions 81
    - Greek 19–20, 30
    - Leonardo of Pisa's 57, 60–61
    - Mesopotamian and Chinese 14
    - for third- and fourth-degree equations 6–7
  - Arabic mathematics 47.
    - See also Islamic mathematics
  - archaeology, abstract groups and 122–123
  - Archimedes of Syracuse 194c
  - "Architecture of Mathematics, The" (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170–171
  - area 3–4, 42
  - Argand, Jean Robert 79–82, 200c
  - Argand diagram 80, 99, 200c
  - arguments 99, 191–192
  - Aristarchus of Samos 194c
  - Aristotle 23, 124–127, 125, 130, 135
  - arithmetic 11, 156, 160–161
  - Arithmetica* (Diophantus) 31–33, 194c
  - arithmetic algebra 3
  - Arithmetical Sage 144
  - Arithmetic in Nine Sections* 12. See also *Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art*
  - Ars conjectandi* (Bernoulli) 198c
  - Ars magna* (Cardano) 59, 65, 66, 196c
  - Arthimetica infinitorum* (Wallis) 197c
  - Artis analyticae praxis* (Harriot) 75, 197c
  - Aryabhata 195c
  - associative property 167
  - associative rings 168–169
  - Astronomia nova* (Kepler) 196c
  - astronomy 36–37, 43, 179
  - axioms
    - for Boolean algebra 132–133, 137–138
    - for mathematical systems 180
    - for rings 167–168
    - and unity in mathematics 171
- ## B
- Babbage, Charles 201c
  - Baghdad 47, 48, 195c
  - Banach, Stefan 205c
  - Banach spaces 205c
  - base 2 number system 144
  - Bayes, Thomas 199c
  - Beaumont de Lomagne, France 93
  - Bell Laboratories 208c
  - Bell Telephone Labs 207c
  - Berkeley, George 199c
  - Bernoulli, Jacob 198c
  - Bessel functions 183, 184
  - Bhaskara II (Bhaskaracharya) 42–45, 195c
  - Bijaganita, of *Siddhānta Siromani* (Bhaskara II) 43
  - binary code 139
  - Black, Joseph 199c
  - Bolyai, János 201c
  - Bolzano, Bernhard 202c
  - Boole, George 127–136, 129, 141, 202c
  - Boolean algebra 131–141
    - categorical propositions 135
    - and computers 139–141
    - operators 131–132
    - refinements 136–138
    - true and false values 133–135
  - Boolean expressions 139
  - Borel, Émile 204c
  - Bourbaki group 169–172, 207c, 209c
  - Brahmagupta 36–41, 195c
  - Brahma Spbūta Siddhānta* (Brahmagupta) 37, 40, 41, 195c
  - "Brief Account of Microscopical Observations, A" (Brown) 201c
  - Brouwer, Luitzen E. J. 205c
  - Brown, Robert 201c

- Brownian movement 201c, 204c  
 Buffon, Georges-Louis  
   Leclerc, comte de 199c
- C**
- C (computer language) 208c  
 calculators 9  
 calculus 100–101, 144  
 calendar, Jalali 54, 54  
*Canon mathematicus* (Viète) 196c  
 Cantor, Georg 203c  
 Cardano, Giralamo 59, 64–66, 68, 196c  
 Carnot, Sadi 201c  
 Carnot engine 201c  
 Cartan, Henri 169, 209c  
 Cartesian coordinate system 87–90, 97  
 catastrophe theory 208c  
 categorical propositions 125–127, 135  
 category theory 172, 207c  
 Cauchy, Augustin-Louis xvii, 107, 108, 153–157  
 Cayley, Arthur 157–162, 165  
 characteristic polynomials 153, 162  
 Charles X (king of France) 108, 154  
 chemistry, symmetry groups in 121  
 Chinese mathematics  
   algorithms 180  
   Han dynasty 194c  
   *Nine Chapters on the Mathematical Art* 12–17  
   rhetorical algebra 15–16  
   rod numerals 193c  
   unit fractions 11  
 Christina (queen of Sweden) 92  
 circle(s) 29, 29, 30, 73, 84, 102. *See also* conic sections  
 circuits, computer 136, 140
- classes, of systems 122, 171–172  
 Clausius, Rudolph 202c  
 clay tablets, Mesopotamian 1  
 closed sets 111  
 coefficients  
   in Bhaskara II's studies 43  
   in Brahmagupta's studies 39  
   in Cramer's studies 147–148  
   and eigenvalues 153  
   of equations 59  
   of fifth-degree equations 104  
   functions of 105  
   in Leibniz's studies 145  
   and matrices 173, 174  
   negative 62–63  
   and roots 72  
   table of 155, 158  
   in Viète's studies 70–73  
*Collection* (Pappus) 194c  
 Collège de France 154  
 College of William and Mary 181  
 Collège Royal de Louis-le-Grand 106  
 color, in Brahmagupta's notation 38  
 combinatorics 41  
 commensurability 22–24, 23  
*Commutative Algebra* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 commutative property 161, 167  
 compass. *See* straightedge and compass  
 complex numbers 75, 77, 79, 80, 99  
 computer(s)  
   algorithms for 172–178  
   and Boolean algebra 139–141  
   logic circuits 136
- computer chips 128, 139  
 conclusions, in syllogisms 126  
*Conics* (Apollonius) 83, 194c  
 conic sections  
   Descartes's studies 90–92  
   Fermat's studies 94, 96–97  
   in Greek mathematics 83–84  
 constructible numbers 109–111  
 “constructing” roots of equations 60  
 contour-shaped domains 188  
 coordinate lines, for contour-shaped domains 188  
 coordinate systems 84–85  
   adaptive 176–177, 178  
   Cartesian 87–90, 97  
   curvilinear 187–188  
   for functions 176–177, 187  
   polar coordinates 98, 98, 99  
 Copernicus 196c  
 Cortona, Italy 20  
 Cramer, Gabriel 147–148, 199c  
 Cramer's rule 147–148, 199c  
 Crelle, August Leopold 105, 106  
 cube, doubling  
   and Galois theory 109–111, 114  
   impossibility proof for 112–113  
   with straightedge and compass 30, 30, 73, 102  
 cubed (term) 55  
 cubic equations 62–63  
 cuneiform tablets 7  
 curves 83–84, 91–92, 94  
 curvilinear coordinate systems 187–188  
 cusps 185, 186, 188–189

## D

- Darwin, Charles 202c  
 data, accuracy 185–186  
 Daubechies, Ingrid 208c  
 decomposition, of  
   polynomials 166–167  
 Dedekind, Richard 25  
 degree  
   of an equation 56, 72, 104  
   of a polynomial 75–77  
 Demante, Adelaide-Marie 106  
 Deming, William Edwards 206c  
*Demonstration concerning the completion and reduction of problems* (Khayyám) 54  
*De propria vita* (Cardano) 65  
*De ratiociniis in ludo aleae* (Huygens) 198c  
*De revolutionibus* (Copernicus) 196c  
 Desargues, Gérard 197c  
 Descartes, René 84, 85–92, 124, 197c  
 determinant equations 14, 16–17  
 determinants 144–157  
   early ideas 144–148  
   and spectral theory 148–157  
   theory of 142, 153  
*Dialogues Concerning Two New Sciences* (Galileo) 67, 197c  
 Diderot, Denis 149  
 Dieudonné, Jean 169  
 Differential Analyzer 206c  
*Differential and Analytic Manifolds* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 Digital Library of Mathematical Functions (DLMF) 181–192  
*Dimension Theory* (Hurewicz & Wallman) 207c  
 Diophantus of Alexandria 1, 31–33, 39, 49, 194c  
 “Discontinuous Solutions to Nonlinear Differential Equations” (Oleinik) 207c  
*Discours de la méthode* (Descartes) 84, 86, 91, 197c  
 “La disme” (Stevin) 196c  
*Disquisitiones arithmeticae* (Gauss) 200c  
 distributive law 27, 168  
 division 110, 111  
 DLMF (Digital Library of Mathematical Functions) 181–192  
*Doctrine of Chances, The* (Moivre) 199c  
*Domesday Book* 195c  
 dots, in Brahmagupta’s notation 38  
 double cone 83–84  
 doubling the cube  
   and Galois theory 109–111, 114  
   impossibility proof for 112–113  
   with straightedge and compass 30, 30, 73, 102  
 Dürer, Albrecht 196c
- E**
- Earth-Moon distance 194c  
 Earth-Sun distance 194c  
 École Normale Supérieure 107, 108  
 École Polytechnique 107  
 Egyptian mathematics 10–12, 193c  
 eigenvalues 150–153, 155, 164  
 Eilenberg, Samuel 207c  
 Einstein, Albert 121, 204c  
 Eisenstein, Ferdinand Gotthold Max 157, 162, 165  
*Electromagnetic Theory* (Heaviside) 203c  
 electronic circuits, computer 140  
 Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator (ENIAC) 207c  
*Elements* (Euclid) 26–28, 33, 194c  
*Éléments de géométrie* (Legendre) 200c  
*Eléments de mathématique* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170, 207c  
 Elizabeth I (queen of England) 73  
 ellipse 42, 84. *See also* conic sections  
 empty set 133  
*Encyclopédie* (d’Alembert and Diderot) 149, 199c  
 ENIAC (Electronic Numerical Integrator and Calculator) 207c  
 equations, general theory of 2, 17, 42  
*Equilibrium of Planes* (Archimedes) 194c  
 Eratosthenes of Cyrene 194c  
 Erlangen University 165  
 Erlanger Programme 203c  
*Les espaces abstraits et leur théorie considérée comme introduction à l’analyse générale* (Frechet) 205c  
*Essai sur les coniques* (Pascal) 197c  
 “Essay Towards Solving a Problem in the Doctrine of Chances” (Bayes) 199c  
 Euclidean geometry 28, 120, 156, 204c  
 Euclidean transformations 120, 156  
 Euclid of Alexandria  
   *Elements* 26–28, 33, 194c  
   geometric algebra 30–31  
   view of mathematical applications 19  
 Eudoxus 193c

Euler, Leonhard 78, 104, 199c  
 exact solutions  
   of Greeks 19–20  
   for second-degree equations 60–61  
   for third-degree equations 61–66, 68  
 exclusive definition, OR operator 132  
*Experimental Mathematics* (journal) 209c  
 Extensible 3D (X3D) 190

## F

factors 76–78, 167  
 false values 133, 134, 136, 140  
 Fermat, Pierre de  
   conic sections studies 94, 96–97  
   and Greek mathematics 93–94  
   last theorem 10, 33, 95–96, 197c, 208c  
 Ferrari, Lodovico 65–67, 105  
 Ferro, Scipione, del 61–62, 64  
 Fibonacci, Leonardo 57, 60–61, 196c  
 Fibonacci series 57  
 fields 111, 113–115, 119  
 fifth (musical interval) 21  
 fifth-degree equations 104, 105  
 fifth-degree polynomials 102  
 Fior, Antonio Maria 63, 64  
 first algebras 1–17  
   Chinese 12–17  
   Egyptian 10–12  
   Mesopotamian 1–10  
 first-degree equations 6  
 Fisher, Ronald Aylmer 206c  
 Fontana, Niccolò (Tartaglia) 63, 63–66, 102, 196c  
 Fontenay-le-Comte, France 70

FORTTRAN (FORMula TRANslator) 207c  
 Fourier, Joseph 107, 108  
 fourth (musical interval) 21  
 fourth-degree equations  
   algorithms 6, 65–66, 105, 108  
   Ferrari's solution 66  
   Khayyám's studies 55–56  
   Mesopotamian approximations 6–7  
*Fractal Geometry of Nature, The* (Mandelbrot) 208c  
 fractions 11, 14, 22, 147–148  
 Frechet, Maurice 205c  
 French Revolution 108, 153, 200c  
 Frobenius, Ferdinand Georg 157, 162, 165  
 function(s)  
   continuous nowhere differentiable 203c  
   coordinate systems for 176–177, 187  
   describing real objects with 67  
   high-level mathematical 183–184  
   Sobolev's definition 207c  
   as solutions to equations 81  
   as unknowns 152  
*Functions of a Real Variable* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 fundamental principle of analytic geometry 91–92, 94, 98  
 fundamental principle of solid analytic geometry 92, 98  
 fundamental theorem of algebra 77–82

## G

Galilei, Galileo 67, 196c, 197c  
 Gallup, George Horace 206c

Galois, Évariste 106–111, 201c  
   Galois theory 108–111, 114  
   groups in work of 115, 119–123  
   last writings 103  
   life of 106–108  
 Galois, Nicolas-Gabriel 106  
 Galois theory 108–111, 114  
*Ganita Sara Sangraha* (Mahavira) 40–42, 195c  
 gates (electronic circuits) 140  
 Gauss, Carl Friedrich 78–79, 104, 105, 200c  
 general theory of equations 2, 17, 42  
 general theory of mathematics 14  
*General Theory of Measure and Probability Theory* (Kolmogorov) 206c  
*General Topology* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
*Genetical Theory of Natural Selection* (Fisher) 206c  
 geometric algebra 25–31  
 geometrical representations, of complex numbers 79, 80, 80  
 geometric constructions, of numbers 109–111  
*Geometrie der Lage* (Staudt) 202c  
 geometry. *See also* analytic geometry  
   and algebra in Greek mathematics 25–31  
   and algebra in Islamic mathematics 56  
   and analysis 100  
   Euclidean 28, 120, 156  
   group theory in 120  
   in al-Khwārizmī's proofs 50–51  
   Mahavira's studies 42  
   plane 28

- straightedge and  
compass techniques  
28–30  
and third-degree  
equations 55
- Geometry and Algebra in  
Ancient Civilizations* (Van  
der Waerden) 4
- Girad, Albert 75–77
- Gödel, Kurt 206c
- Göttingen University 78,  
166
- graphs 185–187
- Graunt, John 198c
- Great Mosque at Samarra  
46
- Great Pyramid of Khufu  
193c
- Greek Anthology* (Paton) 31
- Greek mathematics 18–33,  
179, 195c  
conic sections 83–84  
Diophantus's studies  
31–33  
and distributive law 27  
in Fermat's studies  
93–94  
geometric algebra  
25–31  
and incommensurabil-  
ity of [square root]<sup>2</sup>  
24, 25  
Indian v. 35  
in al-Khwārizmī's  
proofs 50–51  
origin 11  
proofs in 14, 23  
of Pythagoreans 20–25
- grid points 176, 177
- groups 115–123  
abstract 122  
nesting 172  
permutation 118–123  
properties xvii,  
116–117  
and reflection of a  
square 117–118  
and rotation of a  
square 115–117  
and subgroups 117  
symmetry 115–116, 121
- group theory 120–122
- Grundzüge der Mengenlehre*  
(Hausdorff) 205c
- Guglielmo (father of  
Fibonacci) 57
- ## H
- Halley, Edmund 198c
- Halmos, Paul 169
- Hamilton, Sir William  
Henry Rowan 162
- Hamilton-Cayley theorem  
162
- Han dynasty 12, 13, 194c
- Hardy-Weinberg law 204c
- Harriot, Thomas 73–75,  
197c
- Hārūn Ar-Rashīd 47
- Hausdorff, Felix 205c
- heap (Egyptian algebraic  
symbol) 11
- Heaviside, Oliver 203c
- Hermite, Charles 157,  
162, 165
- Herschel, William 200c
- high-level mathematical  
(special) functions  
183–184
- Hilbert, David 165, 166,  
204c
- Hindu mathematics  
34–35, 41. *See also* Indian  
mathematics
- Hisāb al-jabr wa'l muqābala*  
(al-Khwārizmī) 49, 195c
- Histoire naturelle* (Leclerc)  
199c
- Hollerith tabulator 203c
- Holmboe, Bernt 104
- homogeneity 71–72, 89
- House of Wisdom 47, 48,  
50, 195c
- Huguenots 70
- Hurewicz, Witold 207c
- Huygens, Christiaan 198c
- Hypatia 34, 195c
- hyperbolas 84. *See also*  
conic sections
- ## I
- ibn-Turk, Abd-al-Hamid  
48
- identities, algebraic 41
- identity matrix 161, 164
- imaginary numbers 5, 74
- impossibility proof  
112–113
- inclusive definition, OR  
operator 136–137
- incommensurability  
22–25, 23, 32
- indeterminate equations  
7–10, 13, 17, 40, 42, 49
- Indian mathematics  
34–45  
Bhaskara's studies  
42–45  
Brahmagupta's studies  
36–40  
Islamic v. 56, 57  
Mahavira's studies  
40–42  
and poetry 45  
*Sulvasutras* 35–36
- inertial reference frames  
121
- infinite sets 176
- input files 139
- integers, polynomials and  
167–168
- Integration* (Nicolas  
Bourbaki group) 170
- intermediary fields 111
- intervals, musical 21
- Introductio* (Euler) 199c
- intuition 24, 25
- invariant properties, of  
determinants and  
matrices 156–157
- inverses 37–38, 161, 164
- Investigation into the Laws of  
Thought on Which Are  
Founded the Mathematical  
Theories of Logic and Prob-  
abilities, An* (Boole) 141
- irrational numbers  
approximations of 25,  
61  
constructibility of  
110–111  
Diophantus's view of 32  
in Indian mathematics  
39, 43  
in second-degree  
equations 5

## Islamic mathematics

- Indian v. 56, 57
- Khayyám's studies 52–57
- al-Khwārizmī's studies 48–52
- Leonardo of Pisa's studies 57
- rhetorical algebra 52

## J

- Jainism 40
- Jalali calendar 54, 54
- James I (king of England) 74
- Janiszewski, Zygmunt 205c
- Japanese mathematics 144
- Japanese school of topology 208c
- JAVA (computer language) 208c
- Jevons, William Stanley 136–137
- Johns Hopkins University 159
- Joule, James Prescott 201c

## K

- Kayal, Neeraj 209c
- Kepler, Johannes 196c
- Khayyám, Omar 52–57, 71, 87, 195c
- al-Khwārizmī, Mohammed ibn-Mūsā 48–52
  - and Cardano 66
  - Hisāb al-jabr wa'l muqābala* 49, 195c
  - and Khayyám 54–57
  - quadratic equations of 59–60
- Klein, Felix 165, 166, 203c
- known quantities 71
- Kolmogorov, Andrey Nikolayevich 206c, 208c
- Kolmogorov complexity 208c
- Kuratowski, Kazimierz 206c

## L

- Lagrange, Joseph-Louis 149, 151–154
- Langley Research Center 181
- Laplace, Pierre-Simon 149, 151–154, 201c
- Lavoisier, Antoine-Laurent 200c
- laws of thought 127–131
- Lebesgue, Henri-Léon 204c
- Leelavati, of *Siddhānta Siromani* (Bhaskara II) 43
- Legendre, Adrien-Marie (or Le Gendre) 200c
- Leibniz, Gottfried 100, 101, 124, 144–147, 198c, 199c
- length 3–4
- Lenin, Vladimir Ilyich 205c
- Leonardo da Vinci 196c
- Leonardo of Pisa (Fibonacci) 57, 60–61, 196c
- letters, for unknowns 70–71
- Le Verrier, Urbain-Jean-Joseph* 202c
- Liber abaci* (Fibonacci) 196c
- Liber de ludo aleae* (Cardano) 196c
- Lie Groups and Lie Algebras* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170
- Lilavati* (Bhaskara II) 195c
- linear equations 6, 143.
  - See also systems of linear equations
- line segments
  - and constructible numbers 109–111
  - in Descartes's multiplication 88, 89
  - incommensurable 22–23
  - unknowns as 87

## Lobachevsky, Nikolay

- Ivanovich 201c
- logic
  - Aristotle's studies 124–127, 135
  - in Boolean algebra 131–141
  - and Boole's laws of thought 127–131
  - and computers 139–141
  - in Islamic mathematics 56, 57
- logical product, in Boolean algebra 131–132, 134
- logical structures, of mathematical systems 103
- logical sum, in Boolean algebra 132, 134
- logic circuits 136
- London Bills of Mortality 198c
- Lorentz, Hendrik Antoon 121
- Lorentz transformations 121
- Louis-Philippe (king of the French) 154
- Lyceum 19, 125, 127

## M

- Mac Lane, Saunders 207c
- Mahavira (Mahaviracharyan) 40–42, 195c
- al-Ma'Mun 47–49, 195c
- Mandelbrot, Benoît 208c
- Markov, Andrey Andreyevich 204c
- Massachusetts Institute of Technology 206c
- “Mathematical Analysis of Logic” (Boole) 128, 141
- mathematical structures 102–123
  - Abel's studies 104–106
  - for algebra 114–123
  - Bourbaki's 169–172
  - and doubling the cube 109–114



- Galois's studies 11,  
106–111  
and group theory 120,  
121  
theory of 172  
mathematical systems. *See*  
systems, mathematical  
“Mathematical Theory of  
Communication, A”  
(Shannon) 207c  
mathematics  
  general theory of 14  
  pure 40  
matrices 142, 157–165  
  addition of 160  
  and coefficients 173,  
  174  
  and determinants  
  142–143  
  and eigenvalues 164  
  identity 164  
  inverse of 164  
  multiplication of 156,  
  160–161, 163–164  
  sparse 174–176  
  square 143, 147,  
  160–164  
  theory of 142, 143,  
  157–162, 164–165  
  for three-variable  
  system 173  
  as variables for  
  polynomials 162  
matrix product 164  
Maxwell, James Clerk  
202c  
Mayan mathematics 34  
measurements 19–20  
“Memoir on the Theory of  
Matrices, A” (Cayley)  
159–160  
Menaechmus 194c  
Mendel, Gregor 203c  
Menger, Karl 205c  
Mersenne, Marin 97  
Mesopotamian  
  mathematics 1–10  
  algorithms in 179–180  
  indeterminate  
  equations 7–10  
  positional notation  
  193c  
  problems and notation  
  1–4  
  problem texts v. *Nine  
  Chapters* 14, 16–17  
  and second-degree  
  equations 5–7  
*Method, The* (Archimedes  
of Syracuse) 194c  
mistakes, in Indian  
  mathematics 36  
modern algebra 123. *See*  
  also algebraic structures  
Moivre, Abraham de 199c  
Monge, Gaspard 154  
monochord 21, 21  
Moon-Earth distance  
  194c  
Moore, Robert Lee 206c  
Moors 57  
Morita, Kiiti 208c  
Morlet, Jean 208c  
motion  
  planets 151–153  
  strings 149–151  
Muhammad (prophet of  
  Islam) 46  
multiple solutions,  
  problems with 32–33  
multiplication  
  and analytic geometry  
  88, 89  
  Descartes on 88, 89  
  and distributive law  
  27  
  Egyptian 11  
  of integers and polyno-  
  mials 167–168  
  logical product 131–  
  132, 134  
  of matrices 156, 160–  
  161, 163–164  
  of natural numbers  
  110  
  of square roots 51  
multiplicative inverses 161  
music 3, 21
- N**
- NAND-gates 141  
Napoléon I Bonaparte  
(emperor of the French)  
108, 154, 200c, 201c  
National Institute of  
Standards and  
Technology (NIST)  
181, 182  
National Socialist  
German Worker's Party  
166  
natural numbers 75–76,  
110  
Nazi Party 166  
*NBS Handbook of  
Mathematical Functions*  
(Abramowitz and  
Stegun) 182–184  
negative coefficients  
62–63  
negative eigenvalues 151,  
152  
negative numbers  
  and al-Khwārizmī's  
  studies 49  
*Arithmetica*  
  (Diophantus) 32  
  Chinese mathematics  
  14, 16–17  
  Descartes's studies 90  
  Indian mathematics  
  38, 39, 43  
  Mesopotamian  
  mathematics 5, 6  
  as roots of polynomials  
  75  
Neptune 202c  
nesting, of groups 172  
new algebra 102–103, 112  
Newcomen steam engine  
198c  
Newton, Sir Isaac 100,  
101, 124, 198c, 199c  
Nicolas Bourbaki group  
169–172, 207c, 209c  
Nightingale, Florence  
159  
*Nine Chapters on the  
Mathematical Art* (*Nine  
Chapters*) 12–17  
*Arithmetica* v. 32  
Mesopotamian  
  problem texts v. 14,  
  16–17  
  rhetorical algebra 13,  
  15–16

- NIST (National Institute of Standards and Technology) 181, 182  
*NIST Handbook of Mathematical Functions* 182
- Noether, Emmy 165–169, 166, 171, 205c
- Noether, Max 165
- nonexistence proofs 24
- NOR-gates 141
- NOR operators 131
- North African  
 mathematics. *See* Islamic mathematics
- NOT-gates 140, 141
- NOT operators 140
- Nouvelles méthodes pour la détermination des orbites des comètes (Legendre) 200c
- Nova methodus pro maximis et minimis* (Leibniz) 198c
- Nova Scientia* (Fontana) 64
- number(s). *See also specific types*  
 and algebraic equations 56  
 closed sets 111  
 complex. *See* complex numbers  
 constructible 109–111  
 imaginary 5, 74  
 irrational. *See* irrational numbers  
 multiplication of  
   matrices by 161  
 natural 75–76, 110  
 negative. *See* Negative numbers  
 prime 75–76, 167, 209c  
 Pythagorean  
   conception 21–22  
 rational. *See* rational numbers  
 Renaissance  
   conception 66  
   variables as 28  
 number theory 97  
 numerical algebra 3
- numerical grid generation 184–186, 188–191
- numerical simulations 177–178
- ## O
- oblique coordinates 90, 97
- octave 21
- Old Dominion University 181
- Oleinik, Olga 207c
- On Polygonal Numbers* (Diophantus) 31–32
- “On the Dynamical Theory of Heat” (Thomson) 202c
- “On the Hypotheses That Form the Foundations of Geometry” (Riemann) 202c
- “On the Mode of Communication of Cholera” (Snow) 202c
- On the Origin of Species by Means of Natural Selection* (Darwin) 202c
- operations. *See also specific operations*  
 for algebraic objects 142  
 inverse 37–38  
 and rings 168
- operators  
 in Boolean algebra 131–132, 136–137  
 and gates of circuits 140, 141
- Oresme, Nicholas 196c
- Organon* (Aristotle) 127
- OR-gates 140, 141
- origin, Cartesian  
 coordinate system 87
- OR operators 132, 136–137, 140, 141
- output file 140
- overdetermined systems 145
- Oxford University 73
- ## P
- palindromes, numerical 41
- Pappus of Alexandria 94, 194c
- parabolas 84. *See also* conic sections
- Paradoxien des Unendlichen* (Bolzano) 202c
- Pascal, Blaise 197c
- Pascaline 197c
- Paton, W. R. 31
- Peano, Giuseppe 203c
- Pearson, Karl 206c
- Perelman, Grigory 209c
- perfect intervals (music) 21
- permutation groups 118–123
- Philosophiae naturalis principia mathematica* (Newton) 198c
- physics, analysis and 100, 101
- place-value notation 57
- plane geometry 28
- Plane Loci* (Appollonius) 94
- planets, motion of 151–153
- Plato 23, 125, 194c
- Plimpton 322 7
- poetry, Indian  
 mathematics and 45
- Poincaré, Henri 203c
- Poincaré conjecture 209c
- Poisson, Siméon-Denis 108
- Poitiers, France 69
- polar coordinates 98, 98, 99, 187–188
- poles 185–186, 189
- Polish school of topology 205c
- polynomials  
 characteristic 153, 162  
 decomposition of 166–167  
 degree of 75–77  
 fifth-degree 102  
 in fundamental theorem of algebra 82  
 importance of 81  
 and integers 167–168  
 and linear factors 76–78

- matrices as variables 162
  - negative roots 75
  - and second-degree equations 5
  - third-degree 74, 102
  - Poncelet, Jean-Victor 201c
  - positive eigenvalues 151, 152
  - precision 20, 171
  - premises, in syllogisms 126
  - prime numbers 75–76, 167
  - Principia mathematica* (Russell & Whitehead) 204c
  - problem solving
    - in 16th century 69–70
    - Chinese 14
    - early algebras 17, 18
    - Egyptian 11
    - Greek 18
    - by al-Khwārizmī 49
    - Mesopotamian 2–3
  - problem texts 1, 3, 14, 16–17, 32
  - product
    - logical 131–132, 134
    - matrix 164
  - proof(s)
    - distributive law 27
    - for doubling the cube 112–113
    - Fermat's last theorem 96
    - fundamental theorem of algebra 78–82
    - Greek 14, 23
    - incommensurability of diagonal of a square 24, 25
    - Indian 36, 41, 50–51
    - al-Khwārizmī's 50–51
    - Mesopotamian and Chinese view 14
    - nonexistence 24
  - prose 43. *See also* Rhetorical algebra
  - protoalgebra 3
  - Ptolemy of Alexandria 34, 194c
  - pure mathematics 40
  - Pythagoras of Samos 11, 18, 20–21, 193c
  - Pythagoreans 20–25, 193c
  - Pythagorean theorem 8, 9, 17, 20, 110
  - Pythagorean triples 9, 10, 95–96
- Q**
- Qin Shi Huang (emperor of China) 12
  - quadratic equations. *See* second-degree equations
  - quadratic formula xviii, 5
  - quantum mechanics 165
  - Queen's College 130
- R**
- radians 99
  - Raleigh, Sir Walter 73, 74
  - rational numbers
    - as approximations of irrational 61
    - in *Arithmetica* (Diophantus) 32
    - constructibility of 110
    - field of 111, 114
    - in Indian mathematics 39, 43
  - ratios 21, 22
  - real numbers 111
  - recursion algorithms 8, 9
  - reference frame 121
  - reflection of a square 117–118
  - Réflexions sur la puissance motrice du feu* (Carnot) 201c
  - Reign of Terror 154, 200c
  - relativity theory 121
  - Renaissance mathematics
    - algorithms 58–59, 61–66, 68
    - number conception 66
    - and science 67–68
    - second-degree equations 59–60
  - rhetorical algebra 52
    - algebraic symbols v. 69
    - in *Ars magna* 66
  - of al-Khwārizmī 50–52, 60
  - in *Nine Chapters* 13, 15–16
  - Rhind papyrus 193c
  - Riemann, Georg Friedrich Bernhard 202c
  - right triangles 8, 9
  - rigor, in mathematics 36, 51
  - rings 167–169
  - Roanoke Island, North Carolina 73
  - roots
    - in Boolean algebra 137
    - and coefficients 72
    - constructing 60
    - and degree of equation 72
    - Galois's studies 106
    - of polynomials 74–77
    - of quadratic equations 59
    - and structure 119
  - rotation of a square 115–117
  - Royal College at La Flèche 85–86
  - Royal Military Academy 159
  - Royal Society of London 130
  - Rubāiyāt of Omar Khayyām, The* (Khayyām) 53–54, 195c
  - rules
    - in Indian mathematics 37–38, 41
    - of inverse operation 37–38
    - in *Nine Chapters* 15
  - Russell, Bertrand 127, 204c
- S**
- Sabeans 47
  - Saint John's College 158
  - Saunders, Bonita 181, 181–192
  - Savery, Thomas 198c
  - Saxena, Nitin 209c
  - Schröder, Ernst 137, 138

- science. *See also specific fields*  
 algebra in 67–68  
 group theory in 121  
 progress in  
   mathematics v. 179  
 second-degree equations  
   Bhaskara II's studies 43, 44  
   Brahmagupta's studies 39–40  
   for conic sections 94  
   form of 104  
   Khayyám's studies 54–55  
   al-Khwārizmī's 49–50  
   and Mesopotamians 5–7  
   in Renaissance v.  
     Islamic mathematics 59–60  
 Seki Kōwa (Takakazu) 144  
 sets 111, 133, 176  
 Shannon, Claude 207c  
 Shewhart, Walter 207c  
*Siddhānta Siromani*  
   (Bhaskara II) 43–44  
 Sierpiński, Waclaw 205c  
 Sierpiński gasket 205c  
 simulations, numerical 177–178  
 Smoluchowski, Marian 204c  
 Snow, John 202c  
 Sobolev, Sergey 207c  
 solar system model 152  
 solid analytic geometry,  
   fundamental principle of 92, 98  
 sparse matrices 174–176  
 special functions 183–184  
 special theory of relativity 121  
*Spectral Theories* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 splines 188  
 splitting fields 114–115, 119  
 square  
   incommensurability of diagonal of 23–25  
   reflection of 117–118  
   rotation of 115–117  
   symmetry  
     transformations 115–118  
 square matrices 143, 147, 160–164  
 square roots 8, 9, 14, 51  
 squaring, of circles 29, 29, 30, 73, 102  
 Staudt, Karl Georg  
   Christian von 202c  
 Stegun, Irene 182–184  
 Stevin, Simon 75, 196c  
 straightedge and compass techniques 28–30, 109–110  
 strings, motion of 149–151  
 structures 103. *See also*  
   algebraic structures  
   subfields 111  
   subgroups 117, 119  
   subtraction 110  
*Sulvasutras* 35–36  
 sum, logical 132, 134  
 Sun-Earth distance 194c  
 Sun Microsystems 208c  
 surfaces 92, 189–191  
 syllogisms 125–127, 131, 135  
 Sylvester, James Joseph 157–159, 162, 164–165  
 symbolic language  
   in analytic geometry 97–101  
   in calculus 100–101  
   Diophantus's 32  
   al-Khwārizmī's 51  
   and precision 171  
   Viète's 68–73  
 symbolic logic 130, 131  
 symbols, mathematic 124, 128  
 symmetry groups 115–118, 121  
 symmetry transformations 115–118, 172  
 syncopated algebra 32, 38, 42, 43  
 systems, mathematical  
   classes of 122, 171–172  
   group structure 120  
   and logical structures 103  
   models 122, 180  
   overdetermined 145  
   structure of 123  
 systems of linear equations  
   d'Alembert's studies 151  
   algorithms 173–174  
   Cauchy's studies 155–157  
   Cramer's studies 147–148  
   Eisenstein's studies 157–158  
   Laplace and Lagrange's studies 151–152  
   Leibniz's studies 143, 145–147
- ## T
- table of coefficients 155, 158  
 Takakazu (Seki Kōwa) 144  
 Tartaglia. *See* Fontana, Niccolò  
 Thabit ibn Qurra  
   al-Harrani, Ali-sabi 47  
 Thales of Miletus 11, 18, 193c  
 theorems xvii, 138  
*Théorie analytique des probabilités* (Laplace) 201c  
*Theory of Sets* (Nicolas Bourbaki group) 170  
 third-degree equations  
   algorithms 105  
   exact solutions 61–66, 68  
   Khayyám's studies 55  
   Mesopotamian approximations 6–7  
   in Renaissance mathematics 60  
 third-degree polynomials 74  
 Thom, René 208c  
 Thompson, Benjamin (Count Rumford) 200c  
 Thomson, William (Lord Kelvin) 202c, 203c

three-variable systems  
173–174

tones, musical 21

*Topological Vector Spaces*  
(Nicolas Bourbaki  
group) 170

*Topologie* (Kuratowski)  
206c

*Traité de la section perspec-  
tive* (Desargues) 197c

*Traité des propriétés des  
figures* (Poncelet) 201c  
translation, of triangles  
156

*Treatise on demonstration of  
problems of algebra*

(Khayyám) 54, 195c  
triangles 8, 9, 88, 89, 156  
Trinity College 158

trisection, of angles 29,  
29, 30, 73, 102

true values 133, 134, 136,  
139

truth table 134, 137

Turing, Alan 206c

## U

“Über eine Eigenschaft  
des Inbegriffes aller  
reelen algebraischen  
Zahlen” (Cantor) 203c

Ujjain, India 37, 37, 43

uncertainty, in  
measurements 19–20

Union of Soviet Socialist  
Republics (USSR) 205c

United States Census  
Bureau 203c, 206c, 207c

unit fractions 11

Universal Automatic  
Computer (UNIVAC I)  
207c

universal set 133

University of Bologna 61

University of Christiania  
104

University of Leiden 75

University of Milan 65

University of Pennsylvania  
207c

University of Poitiers 70,  
85

University of Virginia  
158

unknowns

Descartes’s

representation 87

Euclid’s rules for 28

functions as 152

heaps 11

Khayyám’s representa-  
tion 71, 87

as line segments 87

Viète’s representation  
70–71

Uranus 200c, 202c

Urysohn, Paul  
Samuilovich 205c

USSR Academy of  
Sciences 207c

## V

Van der Waerden 4

variables

in Brahmagupta’s

solutions 39

Euclid’s rules for 28

interpretations of 124  
matrices as 162

in systems of linear  
equations 145–148

three-variable system  
173–174

Venn diagram 132–133,  
133

verse, in Indian

mathematics 36–38, 43

“Versuche über  
Pflanzenhybriden”

(Mendel) 203c

Viète, François 70–74,  
196c

*Vija-Ganita* (Bhaskara II)  
195c

Virtual Reality Modeling  
Language (VRML) 190

VRML (Virtual Reality  
Modeling Language)  
190

## W

Wallis, John 197c

Wallman, Henry 207c

Waterloo, battle of 201c

Watt, James 199c

“wavelets” 208c

Weierstrass, Karl 203c

Weil, Andre 170

Wessel, Caspar 200c

Whitehead, Alfred North  
204c

whole numbers 9, 10, 14,  
21, 24

width 3–4

Wiles, Andrew 96, 208c

word problems 41, 43–45.

*See also* rhetorical algebra

World War I 205c

World War II 206c

## X

X3D (Extensible 3D) 190

$x$ -axis 88

$x$  coordinate 89

## Y

$y$ -axis 88

$y$  coordinate 89

## Z

Zeno of Elea 193c

Zermelo, Ernst 204c

zero

in Boolean algebra  
133

as determinant 145

division by 111

ziggurat 2